



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

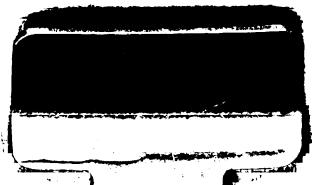
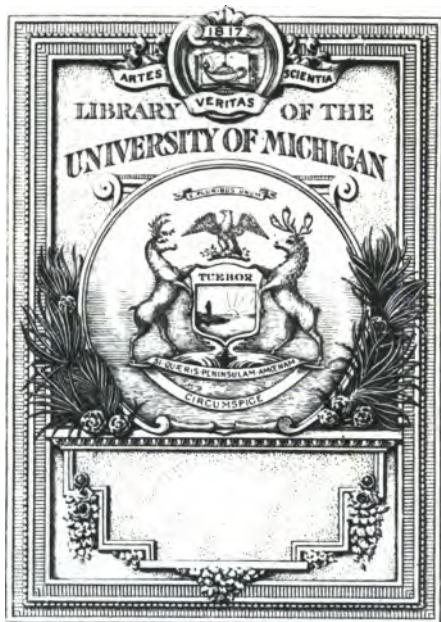
We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

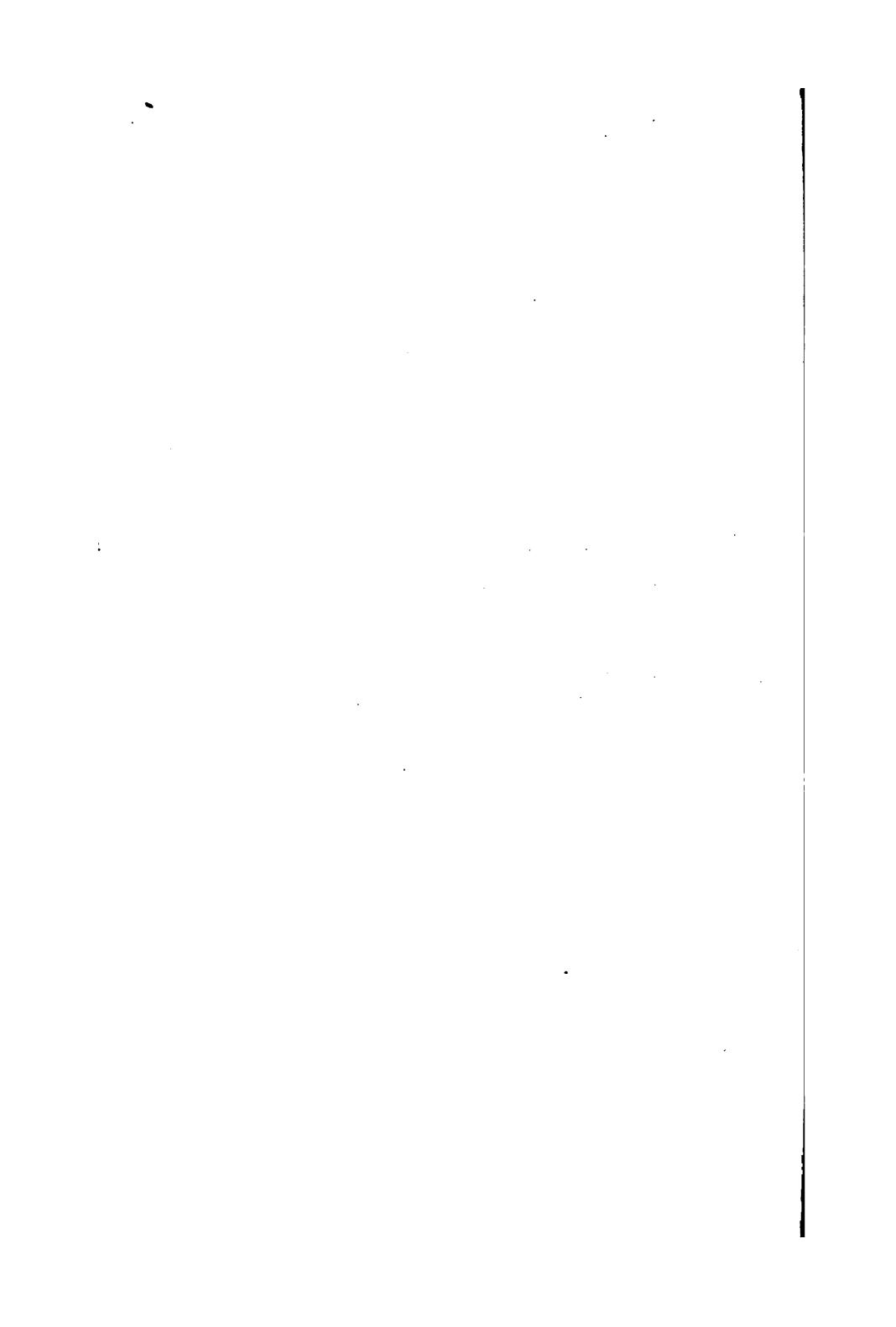
About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

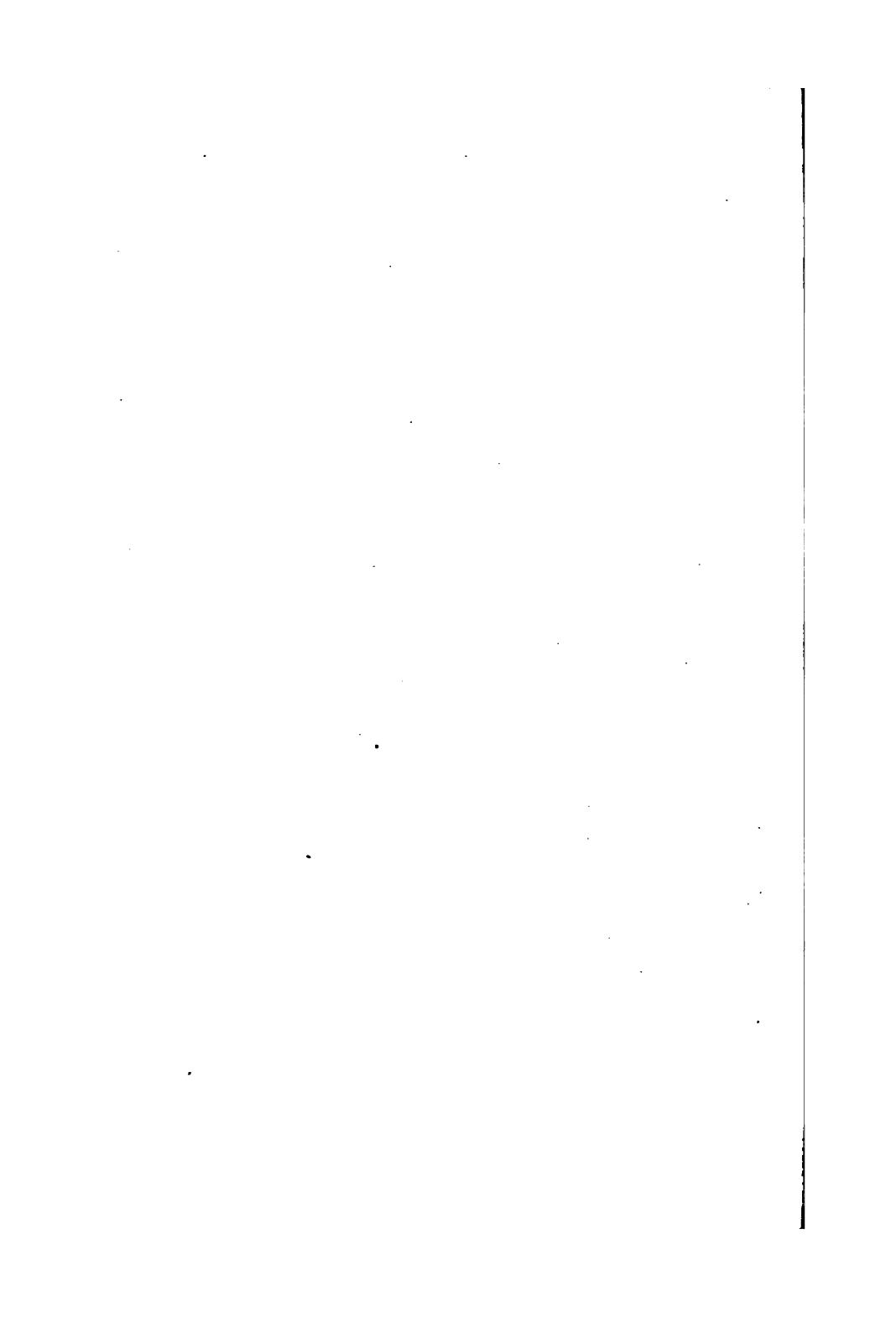
A 1,015,944



596.9
112



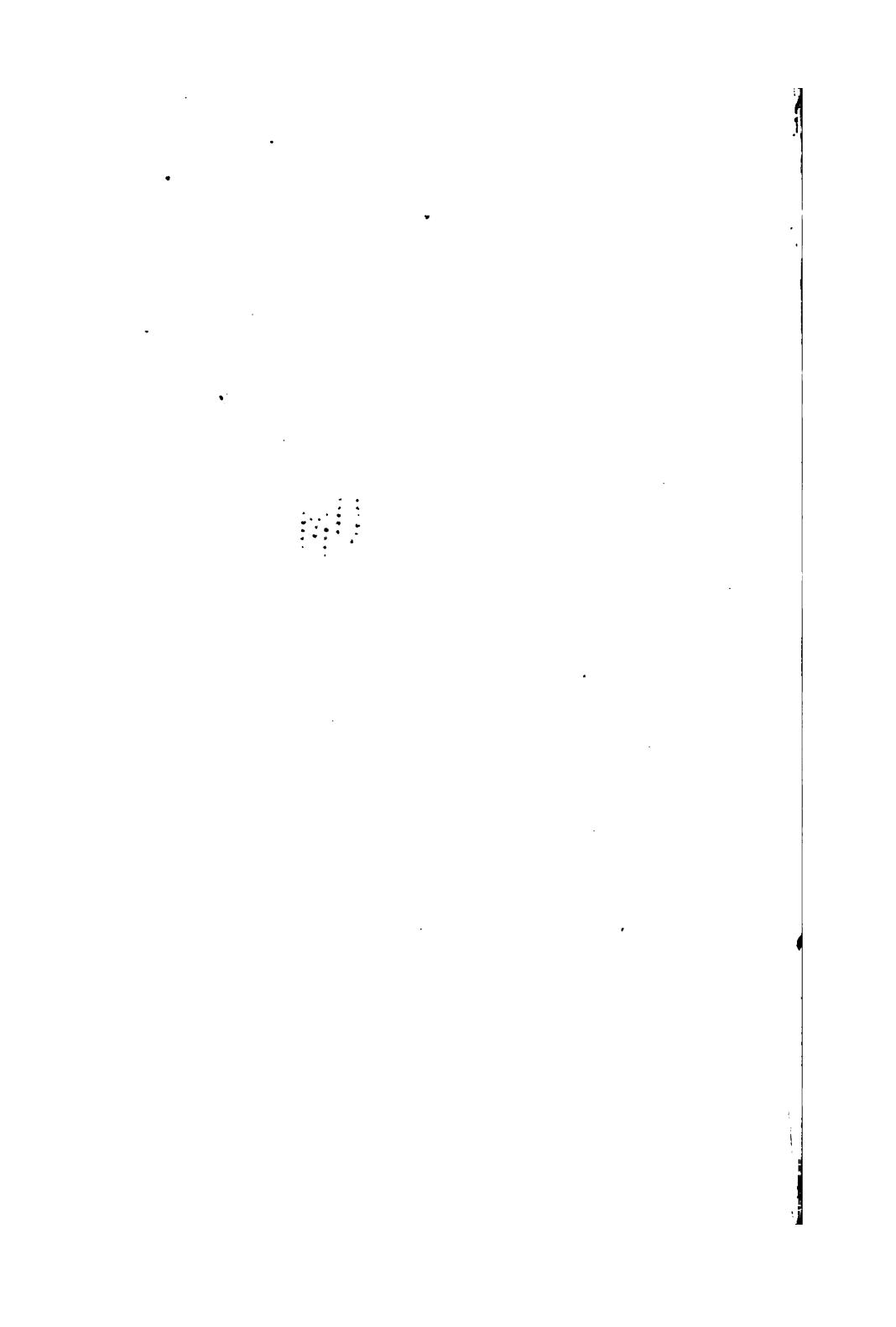
A CONCISE GRAMMAR
OF THE
RUSSIAN LANGUAGE



A CONCISE GRAMMAR
OF THE
RUSSIAN LANGUAGE

BY
LEONARD A. MAGNUS, LL.B.
Editor and translator of the "Armament of Igor,"
"Russian Folk Tales," &c.

NEW YORK
E. P. DUTTON AND COMPANY
1916



CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Preface	xvii
Introduction	xix
Alphabet	xxi
Russian Script and Italic	xxiii
Specimen of Handwriting	xxiv
§ 1. The Use and Value of the Letters	1
§ 2. The Vowels—	
(1) Hard and Soft Vowels	2
(2) а and я	2
(3) ә, е and ѣ	3
(4) ы, ы, и, ү	3
(5) о and ё	4
(6) ү and ю	5
(7) ң and ь	5
§ 3. The Consonants—Voiced and Unvoiced	6
§ 4. General Observations on the Consonants	6
§ 5. The Hard and Soft Consonants.—Preliminary	8
(1) The Labials н, б, м, в, ф, ё	8
(2) The Dentals т, д, н	9
(3) The Gutturals к, г, х	10
(4) The Sibilants and Compound Consonants с, з, ш, ж, ң, ң, ч	11
(5) The Liquids ң and р	13
§ 6. Conglomerated Consonants when Final	14
§ 7. Transliteration into Russian	14
§ 8. Russian Diphthongs	15
§ 9. The Change of е to ё	16
ACCIDENCE.	
§ 10. The Parts of Speech	19
THE NOUN.	
§ 11. Preliminary Observations.—The Genders	20
§ 12. The Declensions	21

	PAGE
§ 13. The Cases	22
§ 14. The Numbers	23
§ 15. Hard and Soft Nouns	24
§ 16. The First Declension—Masculines	25
§ 17. The First Declension—Neuters	26
§ 18. The Second Declension in <i>a</i> and <i>я</i>	28
§ 19. The Third Declension in <i>и</i> and <i>мя</i> —Masculines of the Third Declension— <i>путь</i>	30
§ 20. Feminines of the Third Declension	30
§ 21. Neuters in <i>мя</i> of the Third Declension	32
§ 22. Remains of Older Forms in the Third Declension—	
(1) <i>мать, dochь</i>	32
(2) <i>дитя</i>	33
§ 23. Discussion of the Nouns	33
§ 24. Remarks on the Masculine Nouns of the First Declension—	
(1) Genitive and locative singular in "y" The "u" declension	34
(2) Plurals in <i>-ья</i>	35
(3) Plurals in <i>-á</i>	36
(4) Genitive plural in <i>-ъ</i>	37
(5) Nominative singular in <i>-инъ</i>	38
(6) Irregular formations	39
§ 25. Accentuation of the Masculine Nouns of the First Declension	39
§ 26. Remarks on the Neuter Nouns of the First Declension—	
(1) Genitive plural in <i>-ъ</i> and <i>-ей</i>	41
(2) Neuters in <i>-ie</i> and feminines in <i>-ия</i>	42
(3) Mixed masculine and neuter declension—nouns in <i>-ище, -ко</i> and others	43
(4) Plurals in <i>-ья</i>	43
(5) Irregular forms—	
(a) Obsolete, <i>небо, чудо, -ята</i>	44
(b) Duals	45

CONTENTS.

vii

	PAGE
§ 27. Accentuation of the Neuter Nouns of the First Declension	45
§ 28. Remarks on the Second Declension—	
(1) Genitive plural in -ь and -ей	46
(2) Contraction of -ою, -ею to -ой, -ей	47
(3) Masculine nouns in second declension	47
(4) Nouns in -ия	47
§ 29. Accentuation of Second Declension	47
§ 30. Remarks on the Third Declension	49
§ 31. Accentuation of the Third Declension	49
§ 32. The "Euphonic" Vowels о, е and ё—	
I. Extrusion of ъ and ѿ when unaccented	50
II. Insertion of о and е for euphony	52
III. What heavy final consonants are allowed	54
IV. Remarks on the third declension	55

THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 33. Preliminary Observations—	
(1) The syntactical importance of the adjective	55
(2) The use of possessive and descriptive adjectives	56
(3) No distinction of gender in the plural	56
(4) The predicative adjective	56
(5) The determinative and simple adjective	56
(6) The accentuation of the adjective	58
(7) No third declension adjectives	58
(8) The unnecessary grammarians' spellings in the determinatives	58
(9) The substantival use of adjectives	58
§ 34. The Simple, Possessive and Descriptive Adjectives—	
(1) Examples of simple adjectives	58
(2) Formation of possessive adjectives and examples	59
(3) Formation of descriptive adjectives	61

	PAGE
§ 35. The Determinative Adjectives—	
(1) The scheme and formation	62
(2) Examples	64
§ 36. The Formation of the Predicatives—	
(1) Where no corresponding predicate exists	68
(2) Where no corresponding determinative exists	68
(3) Possessives	68
(4) Instances of accentuation of predicates	68
§ 37. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Formation—	
(1) Comparative and superlative, how formed	70
(2) The superlative	70
(3) Substitutes for the superlative	71
§ 38. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Rules—	
I. Use of the uninflected form	72
II. The four simple inflected superlatives	73
III. Adjectives with no determinative comparative	73
IV. Use of prefix <i>no</i> with indeclinable comparative	73
V. Translation of “than”	74
§ 39. The Comparison of Adjectives.—Examples—	
I. The regular form <i>-še</i> , <i>-ѣшиш</i> , and accentuation	74
II. The shorter form <i>-še</i> , <i>-ѣшиш</i>	74
III. Comparison with words from different roots	77
THE PRONOUN.	
§ 40. (1) Preliminary observations	77
(2) Table of Russian pronouns and adverbs .	78-9

CONTENTS.

ix

	PAGE
§ 41. Examples of the Pronouns—	
I. The interrogative pronouns	80
Remarks on <i>коñ</i> , <i>чоñ</i> , <i>котóрый</i> , <i>скóлько</i>	81
II. The relatives <i>кто</i> , <i>котóрый</i>	81
III. The demonstratives <i>тотъ</i> , <i>этотъ</i> , <i>бóй</i> , <i>сей</i> ; remarks on the use of them	82
IV. The universals <i>каждый</i> , <i>весь</i> , <i>всíкiй</i> .	83
V. The personal pronouns and possessives	84
(1) Use of <i>свой</i> and <i>себá</i> , <i>ся</i>	85
(2) Use of <i>егó</i> , etc., with preposi- tions.	85
(3) Instrumental fem. sing. in <i>-оñ</i>	86
(4) When personal pronouns are used	86
VI. The indefinite pronouns	86
VII. The negative pronouns. The double negative in Russian	87
VIII. The pronouns of identity, and <i>самъ</i> and <i>самый</i>	87
IX. The pronouns of difference, <i>другóй</i> , <i>иñóй</i> , <i>прóчие</i>	88

THE VERB.

§ 42. (1) Table of Russian Verbs	89
(2) Preliminary observations—	
(i) The parts of the Russian verb.	90
(ii) The deficiencies of the Russian verb and the aspects	91
(iii) How the parts are formed	92
(iv) Verbs original and derivative	92
§ 43. The Russian Infinitive — Consonantal and Vocalic	93
§ 44. The forms derived from the Infinitive	94
§ 45. The formations from the 1st person sing. Present	96
§ 46. The laws of the accentuation of the verbs	96

	PAGE
§ 47. Paradigms of <i>желать</i> and <i>върить</i>	98
§ 48. The Four Conjugations.—Some Phonetic Rules	99
§ 49. The First Conjugation. The Present forms—	
I. Guttural roots, infinitives in -чъ	100
II. Nasal roots, infinitives in -ять; verbal noun and past part. pass. in т	101
III. Sibilant roots, infinitives in -стй, -сть	103
IV. Liquid roots. (1) Infinitives in -ереть, -елеть; verbal noun and past part. pass. in т	104
(2) Infinitives in -ороть, -олоть	104
V. Dental roots, infinitives in -стй, -сть	105
ицтй, честь, сѣсть	106
Accentuation of past tense	107
VI. Roots in в, жить, пытъ, слыть	107
VII. Consonantal roots with suffixal a in infinitive	108
§ 50. The Second Conjugation in -нуть. Preliminary.	
I. "Instantaneous" verbs and their accentuation	109
II. "Inchoative" verbs and their accentuation	110
III. Examples of conjugation	111
§ 51. The Third Conjugation.—Preliminary	112
§ 52. The Original Verbs of the Third Conjugation.	
I. Those in which termination is directly to root—	
(1) Liquid roots, олоть, ороть	112
(2) Vocalic roots (α) in "а" знать, сіять	113
(β) Roots in и, бить, etc., past part. pass. in т	113
(γ) Roots in у, дуть, past part. pass. in т	113
(δ) Roots in ё, смѣть	113
(ε) Verbs in ыть and ить, past part. pass. in т	114
II. Verbs with suffixal infinitive in -ать, -ять, and accentuation	115
слать, стать, дыхать, etc.	116

	PAGE
§ 53. Derivative Verbs of the Third Conjugation—	
(1) From nouns in -атъ, -ять	116
(2) Inceptives in -ѣтъ	116
Accentuation of them	117
(3) I. Derivatives in -оватъ, and accentuation. Derivatives in -ироватъ, and accentuation	117
II. Original verbs in -оватъ, -еватъ	118
(4) Iteratives in -атъ, -ять	119
(5) Iteratives in -ыватъ, -иватъ	119
даватъ, ставатъ, знаватъ	120
§ 54. The Fourth Conjugation. Preliminary—	
Infin. in -ѣть, -ить	120
§ 55. The Fourth Conjugation. Original Verbs—	
I. In -атъ, -ять, гнать, стойть, спать	121
II. In -ѣть, -ать, and accentuation	122
Past tense in -ѣмъ	123
хотѣть, бѣжать	123
Accentuation of original verbs in -ить	124
§ 56. The Fourth Conjugation. Derivative Verbs.	
Accentuation and origins	125
§ 57. Anomalous Verbs—	
I. Mixed conjugations. The same root throughout. ревѣть, хотѣть, -дѣть, стать, постыдѣть, обратѣть, -шибѣть	126
II. Using different roots. идти, быть (and its compounds), бѣхать	127
III. Obsolete forms. здаль, verbs in "in," вѣмъ, есмъ, єсть, дать	128
§ 58. The Aspects of the Verbs. Preliminary .	130
Perfective—Imperfective—Abstract—Iterative—Instantaneous—Causative—Inceptive	131
Verbs having no perfective	132

	PAGE
§ 59. The Formation of the Aspects—	
I. (1) From original verbs	133
Monosyllabic roots. Those naturally	
perfective	133
Iteratives in -áть, -váть	134
When compounded	134
-четь and -читáть	135
(2) Second conjugation in -нуть	135
The “instantaneous” aspect	135
(3) Third conjugation. Prepositions	
to form perfective	135
Iteratives in -ывать, -áть	136
двигáть, двигáться, etc.	137
(4) Fourth conjugation. Original verbs	
in -ить, -éть. Imperfective in -áть.	
Abstract forms in -áть, -áть, -йть .	137
When compounded, abstract is	
imperfective	138
Iterative forms in -áть, -áть	139
Iteratives in -ивать, -ывать	140
II. The formation of perfective of derivative	
verbs	140
With prepositions	140
III. Aspects formed from a different root.	
Perfective and imperfective, concrete	
and abstract	141
IV. The aspects of compounded verbs in -ить,	
-áть, -áть, -нуть, -ывать	142
V. Causatives and inceptives in -ить and -éть	145
VI. По and за as forming depreciatory, or	
diminutive, and inceptive aspects	146
§ 60. Reflexive and Passive Verbs—другъ друга .	147

THE NUMERALS.

PAGE

§ 61. Preliminary	149
§ 62. I. The numerals 1-10	150
Declension of <i>óba</i>	152
II. The numerals 11-90	152
III. The numerals 100-1,000,000.— <i>sto</i>	153
The compound numerals.— <i>тысяча</i>	154
IV. Notes—	
(1) Frequency	155
(2) Distributives	155
(3) Nought	155
(4) Noun governed by last numeral	155
(5) Decimals	156
(6) Compound ordinals and examples	156
(7) Declension of <i>два</i> with nouns— <i>двóи</i> , etc.	157
(8) Fractions— <i>половíна</i> , <i>полторá</i> ; <i>пол-</i> compounds	158
(9) Dates— <i>годъ</i> and <i>лéто</i>	160
§ 63. THE ADVERBS	160
§ 64. THE PREPOSITIONS	161
§ 65. THE CONJUNCTIONS	161
§ 66. THE INTERJECTIONS	161

SYNTAX.

§ 67. Preliminary—Concord—Order of Words— Predominance of Adjective	162
§ 68. The Article	163
§ 69. The Cases— I. Nominative	163
II. Vocative	164
III. Accusative as object	164
Special uses: duration	165

	PAGE
IV. Genitive	165
(i) Ownership — Possessive adjectives — Subjective genitive and objective always follows	166
(ii) Partitive	170
(iii) In impersonal sentences	171
(iv) Replaced by dative	171
(v) After comparatives	172
(vi) Objective case	172
(vii) After certain adjectives and verbs	172
(viii) Dates	173
(ix) Partitive sense	173
(x) Descriptive	173
V. The Dative	174
VI. Instrumental	175
(1) Agent	175
(2) Means	175
(3) Predicative	176
(4) Manner	176
(5) Measurement	176
(6) Words of quality	177
(7) Time	177
(8) After certain verbs	177
VII. The Locative.	177
§ 70. Table of Prepositions and Particles	178-9
§ 71. The Prepositions and Particles.—Preliminary	180
§ 72. The Prepositions governing only the Accusative	181
§ 73 (1). The Prepositions governing only the Genitive	182
§ 73 (2). The Prepositions governing only the Dative	187
§ 74. The Prepositions governing only the Instrumental and <i>между</i>	188
§ 75. The Prepositions governing only the Locative	189
§ 76. The Prepositions <i>подъ</i> , <i>предъ</i> and <i>за</i>	189
§ 77. The Prepositions <i>въ</i> , <i>о</i> and <i>на</i>	193
§ 78. The Prepositions <i>по</i> and <i>съ</i>	198
§ 79. The Verbal Prefixes <i>воз</i> , <i>вы</i> , <i>пере</i> , <i>пре</i> , <i>разъ</i>	201
§ 80. The Accentuation of Prepositions and Particles	204

CONTENTS.

xv

	PAGE
§ 81. The Numerals—	
I. The date, days, months, etc.	206
II. Age	208
III. Adjectives compounded with numerals	209
IV. The time of day	209
V. Fractions	210
VI. Russian money	212
VII. Frequencies	212
VIII. One cardinal now obsolete	213
IX. Cards	213
§ 82. The Pronouns—	
I. Interrogative	214
II. Relative	214
III. Indefinite pronouns. Use of <i>ни</i>	215
IV. The reciprocal pronouns	216
V. The negative pronouns	217
§ 83. The Russian Appellatives—	
I. In conversation — <i>вы</i> , <i>ты</i> , <i>бáринъ</i> , patronymics.	218
II. Between masters and servants	220
III. Addressing meetings	221
IV. Titles	221
V. Addressing letters	223
§ 84. Interrogative sentences— <i>ли</i> , <i>рáзвѣ</i>	225
§ 85. Negative sentences	225
§ 86. The Verb “to be,” omission of “copula”	228
§ 87. The Verb “to have”	230
§ 88. Special use of Infinitive	231
§ 89. The Gerundives and Participles—	
I. The gerundives	232
II. The participles — past and present. -мый = -ble.	232
§ 90. Subordinate Clauses—	
I. Temporal	234
II. Causal	235
III. Conditional	235
IV. Final. (1) Purpose. (2) Effect	237
V. Reported Speech	238

	PAGE
§ 91. The Imperative. Full forms	241
Adverbial, Preterite and Conditional uses— пошёлъ	241
§ 92. Further illustrations of the Aspects	243
§ 93. The Auxiliaries	247
давнó, бúду, стáну, бúдто	247
тóлько что, бýвало	248
бýло, the future perfect	249
§ 94. The Impersonal Construction— I. Impersonal verbs	249
II. Translation of “one” (says)	250
III. Impersonal construction of active verbs .	250
§ 95. Apocopated forms of some Verbs	250
§ 96. The Reflexive Verbs	251
Passives, Causatives, Deponents, “Middle” Voice	252
§ 97. Russian Relationships	253
Table of Kinship	258
Table of Affinity	259
ETYMOLOGY.—Preliminary.—Accentuation . . .	260
§ 98. The Nouns— I. Foreign terminations in common use	260
II. Disused or dead suffixes	261
III. Patronymics	262
IV. Termination to denote the feminine	262
V. Abstract nouns	262
VI. Verbal nouns	263
VII. The agent or implement	264
VIII. Diminutives— (1) Masculines of first declension	265
(2) Neuters of first declension	265
(3) Feminines and masculines of second declension	266
IX. Augmentatives	267
X. Miscellaneous	267
§ 99. Adjectival Suffixes	268
§ 100. Verbal Formations	270

P R E F A C E.

THE Russian language is becoming daily of increasing importance, both commercially and literarily. It is used over nearly one-seventh of the world, from Petrograd to Vladivostók and in the other Slav States. The literature, popular and cultivated, technical and scientific, published in Russia, must claim the attention of students to the same degree as German has done in the past.

The greatest puzzle in Russian is the accentuation, which governs the pronunciation and inflection, and seems utterly arbitrary. To a large extent it can be scientifically and simply explained, and to this feature the author has devoted especial care.

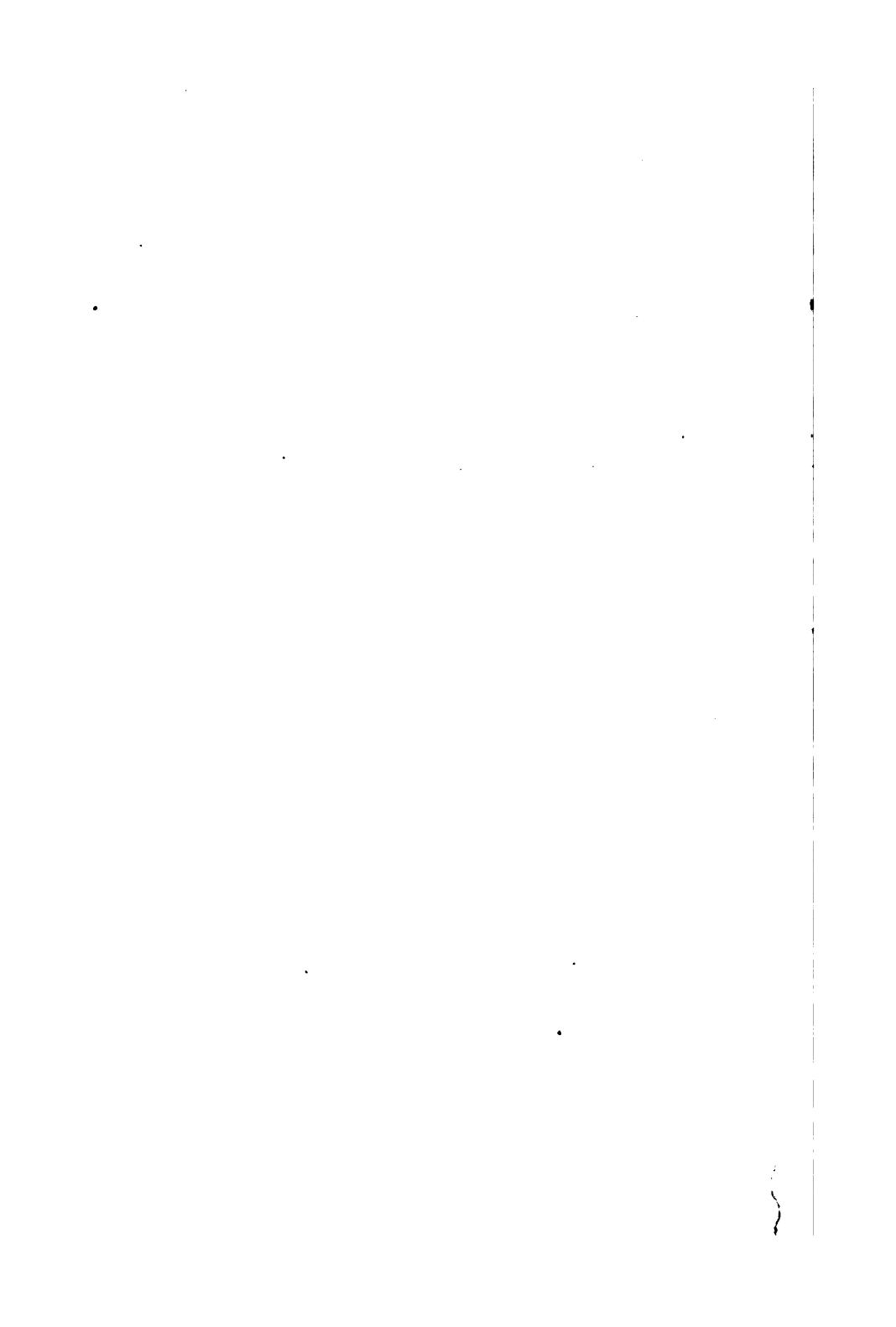
The difficulties of the language cannot be denied ; but they have been accentuated by two accidents : first, that all grammars were constructed on a plan merely imitative of Latin ; secondly, that they mostly came from Germany, and were framed in accordance with the requirements of the German mind.

It is with the ambition of writing a book on Russian grammar that shall translate Russian into English idiom, and shall proceed on lines more consonant with the genius of Slav speech, that this book has been attempted.

The author wishes to express his obligations to many friends, English and Russian, who have rendered him invaluable assistance, and, in particular, to Mr. Mark Sieff and Mr. J. H. G. Grattan ; and to acknowledge his indebtedness to Berneker's Russian studies, and the essays of Professor Boyer (of the Sorbonne).

This grammar, whilst aiming at being practical, is based on historical and philological methods. Explanatory notes on apparent irregularities are added in smaller type, the principal rules being made prominent by italics or otherwise. This grammar should be used in conjunction with one of the progressive readers now being published in England.

L. A. M.



INTRODUCTION.

THE modern Russian language is spoken over the whole extent of the Russian Empire. It originated as the dialect of the Principality of Moscow and the Republic of Nóvgorod, and thus at first embraced all the provinces or governments of Russia proper, except Volhynia, Podolia, Poltáva and Southern Russia (where a dialect called Little-Russian is spoken). In Minsk, Gródno and Vilna another dialect is spoken, called White-Russian.

Russian belongs to the Slavonic branch of the Aryan or Indo-European family of languages; other kindred tongues are Polish, Čech or Bohemian, Moravian, Serbian and Bulgarian.

The Slavonic peoples mostly belong to the Orthodox or Eastern Church. They received their alphabet, their civilisation and their ritual from Constantinople, and hence mostly use modernized or adapted forms of the Cyrillic alphabet, which was created by Saint Cyril and Saint Method in the ninth century on the basis of the Greek alphabet.

Those Slav peoples who belong to the Roman confession use the Latin or Roman alphabet, as we do;

but, to provide symbols for the many sounds, very numerous diacritical marks have had to be added, e.g. ѿ, etc. The Cyrillic alphabet was invented expressly for the Slavonic languages ; and, though the signs are at first strange, they express the sounds more accurately, and, in reality, aid the learner considerably.

The first task of the student of Russian is to familiarise himself with the alphabet, *both* printed and written, so that he may read and write it with ease and promptitude.

In English the vowels a, e, i, o, u have, since Shakespeare's time, been grotesquely diverted from their original value and the general Continental use. The reader must understand that in this Grammar a, e, i, o, u are used as in Italian or German: i.e. ah, cortège, pique, poke, rule; except where specially stated otherwise.

THE RUSSIAN ALPHABET.

The Russian Alphabet consists of thirty-six letters. Of these there are twelve vowels, **а, е, ы, и, ы, о, ы, ы, ю, ы, ы, ы**; twenty-one consonants, **б, в, г, ы, ж, з, к, ы, м, ы, п, ы, р, с, т, ф, ы, ч, ы, ш, ы, щ, ы**; one semi-vowel, **и** (i krátkoy); and two letters which have no sound-value of their own, **ъ, ь**—they influence the softening or hardening of the consonant immediately preceding them.

Printed.	Italic.	Name.	Corresponding Value.	Transliteration.
Caps. Ord.	Caps. Ord.			
А a	А a	a (as in <i>ah</i>)	a (<i>father</i>)	a
Б б	Б б	be (like English <i>buy</i>)	b	b
В в	В в	ve (as in Eng. <i>vale</i>)	v	v
Г г	Г г	ge (like English <i>gay</i>)	g*	g
Д д	Д д	de (like English <i>day</i>)	d	d
Е е	Е е	ye (like English <i>yea</i>)	ye	e or ye
Ж ж	Ж ж	zhe (like French <i>geai</i>)	ž (like s in <i>leisure</i>)	ž
З з	З з	ze (like English <i>zay</i>)	z	z
И и	И и	i (like English 'e)	i (as in <i>pique</i>)	i
И и	И и	и краткое (i krátkoyi)	y (as in <i>yet</i>)	y
І і	І і	и съ точкой (i stóčkoy)	i (as in <i>pique</i>)	i
К к	К к	ka (like English <i>kah</i>)	k	k
Л л	Л л	ell	l	l

* Always "hard" as in *Give*.

Printed.	Italic.	Name.	Corresponding Value.	Transliteration.
Caps. Ord.	Caps. Ord.			
M m	M m	em	m	m
H h	H h	en	n	n
O o	O o	o (as in <i>stock</i>)	o	o
P p	P p	pe (as in <i>pay</i>)	p	p
R p	P p	err (as in Scotch <i>air</i>)	r	r
C c	C c	ess	s	s
T t	T m	te (as in <i>tay</i>)	t	t
Y y	Y y	u (as in <i>rule</i>)	u	u
Φ Φ	Φ Φ	eff	f	f
X x	X x	khah	{ch in <i>loch</i> or German <i>ch</i>	kh
Ч ч	Ч ч	tse (as in <i>tsay</i>)	ts	ts
Ч ч	Ч ч	če (as in <i>chaste</i>)	English ch	č
Ш ш	Ш ш	ša (as in <i>shah</i>)	English sh	š
Ш ш	Ш ш	šč	{čč rapidly combined*}	šč
С Б Б Б	С Б Б Б	yerr (epř)	mute	—
Ы ы	Ы ы	yery (epří)	{y like i in swim}	y
С Б Б Б	С Б Б Б	yerr (epř)	mute	—
С Б Б Б	С Б Б Б	yatt (ptř)	{like Russian e}	ě
Э э	Э э	e (like English ē)	{like ē in ell}	e
Ю ю	Ю ю	yu (like English <i>yu</i>)	yu	yu
Я я	Я я	ya (like English <i>yah!</i>)	ya	ya
С О О о	С О О о	fitá	f	—
В ы	В ы	izitsa	like u	—

* Sounded like shch in *freshcheese*.

RUSSIAN SCRIPT AND ITALIC.

SPECIMEN OF HANDWRITING.

Въ минуту жизни трудную
 Тыснится-ль въ сердцъ грусть
 Одну молитву чудную
 Твержу я наизусть
 Есть сила благодатная
 Въ созвучь словъ живыхъ
 И дышитъ непонятная
 Святая прелестъ въ нихъ
 Съ души какъ бремя скатится
 Сомнѣнья далеко
 И вѣрится и плачетъ
 И такъ легко, легко

ITALIC.

Въ минуту жизни трудную
 Тыснится-ль въ сердцъ грусть
 Одну молитву чудную
 Твержу я наизусть
 Есть сила благодатная
 Въ созвучь словъ живыхъ
 И дышитъ непонятная
 Святая прелестъ въ нихъ
 Съ души какъ бремя скатится
 Сомнѣнья далеко
 И вѣрится и плачетъ
 И такъ легко, легко. (Лермонтовъ.)

RUSSIAN GRAMMAR.

THE ALPHABET.

PARTICULAR attention is drawn to *ö, g, ð, u, m*, *ü, n, c, m, u*; letters which often occasion the learner difficulty. To distinguish *m* and *u* in loose writing, a line is often used above and below, e.g. m, u.

Remember in all transliterations *a, e, i, o, u* should be sounded as in *father, cortège (or été, v. footnote, p. 3), pique, Tom, rule*.

§ 1. THE USE AND VALUE OF THE LETTERS.

The Russian language is nearly phonetic, but has kept a number of letters that have lost their separate values, e.g. *i, š, v, e*; and further, like English, has a strong tonic accent, which tends to slur the preceding and following syllables.

e.g. *Wólverhampton, indúbitably, my lórd, lábora-tory, Sündäy, désultoriness.*

In such English words the vowels all become merged in the atonic vowel, phonetically written *ə* (e.g. *a* in "villa"), and in Russian a similar phenomenon obtains.

But the Russian alphabet, *with these reservations*, has symbols assigned to every separate sound, and thus is nearly phonetic.

The Russian tonic accent is very hard to acquire, and can only be learnt by practice. A few hints can be given here and there. *In this Grammar it is marked throughout, as in all dictionaries.*

§ 2. THE VOWELS.

(1) Russian has no less than fifteen symbols for vowels. They are partly survivals of an older stage of the language.

They are divided into "hard" and "soft," i.e. simple, or preceded by the consonant *v*. This distinction affects the grammar and pronunciation of every word, and the following table must be committed to memory:—

<i>Hard</i> :	а	ә	ы	о	ү	ъ
<i>Soft</i> :	я	е	ѣ	и	ү	ё

(2) *a accented** is sounded like *a* in "father," but somewhat shorter.
Pronunciation of *a* and *я*. e.g. бáба woman

a unaccented is sounded like *a* in "villa." e.g. бáбá.

The familiar phonetic symbol for this sound is *ə*, the *atomic vowel*. Thus бáбá is sounded "bábə."

Unaccented *a* is sounded like the Russian *e* after ж, ч, ш, щ. [v. § 5 (4).]

я accented is sounded *ya*. e.g. я I.

я unaccented is sounded *yę* or *yi* or *i*.

e.g. Бáба-ягá (Bábə-yigá), the name of the Russian witch; любить (lyúbit') they love.

In one instance *я* is sounded *a* in the reflexive suffix *ся* (sa). [v. § 41, V. (1).]

я (ya) also represents the Old Slav *nasal vowel e* (sounded like French *in* in "brin"). This historical fact explains such verbal forms as жать, жмы, жны, root žmъ, žnъ, and nouns in -мы, e.g. пламы, пламени flame. [v. § 21 and § 49, II.] Polish conserves the Old Slav nasals *o* and *e*, e.g. sódzic, Russian сúдить (súd'it') to judge.

* "Accented" means emphasised, stressed. There are no written accents in Russian, except in elementary grammars and texts.

(3) **э** is used in foreign words adapted to Russian, but in no pure Russian words except Pronunciation of **э**, **е**, **я**. **это́ть** (état) this. It is sounded like the French **è** in "trèvē," or the English *ai* in "hair," but shorter. It is only used in transliteration of foreign *e*-sounds.

e.g. Э́мденъ Emden, по́этъ (po-ét) poet, Эи́ль Aisne

е and **ꙗ** now represent the same sound, namely *yě*. In older Russian **ꙗ** had a separate value, varying between *yě* and *ya*.*

e.g. Екатери́на (Yekaterína) Catherine
ꙗмъ (yem) I eat

е is used:—

(i) When it represents *ë* [v. § 2 (5) and § 9].

(ii) When it is inserted to avoid heavy consonants and represents **ъ** [v. § 2 (7) and § 32]; e.g. ве́сь, вся́ (vesh, fsya) all.

When unaccented it becomes a faint *yě* or *i* sound.

e.g. по́ле (pólyě) field сине́е (sín'yěyě) blue

The pronouns **оди́н** and **оди́нъ**, **они́** masc., **они́** fem. and neuter, are both sounded **оди́н**, **они́** (adní, ani).

(4) The sound-value of **ы** is best understood as a rapid combination of German **ü** with **i**, Pronunciation of **ы** and **и**. **ii**; or, it may be got by placing the tongue in the **u** position, the lips in the **i** position. Roughly, it may be produced by sounding the English word *bin* deep in the throat.

No word can ever begin with the vowel ы.

* The sound "ye" (**е** and **ꙗ**) is open [*yě*] or close [*yé*] according as the following consonant is "hard" or "soft."

и is the pure *i*-sound, produced with elongation of the lips, as in French or German.

и (и съ точкой = with a dot) is the same, but only used *before* other vowels (e.g. мнѣніе [mněnje] opinion), except in one word, міръ the world.

When и is used in diphthongs or reduced to the consonantal value of *y* in "yet," it is written ѹ and called и краткое (и short).

e.g. стай (stai) flock

ѵ (ижица) is equivalent to и, and only used to represent the Greek *v* in a few Church words.

Note.—міръ world, міръ peace, міро туртъ, сънодъ synod, and Владіміръ Vladimir (and similar names, e.g. Казіміръ).

(5) о accented is sounded like the German short *o* in Pronunciation "Gott," and can be imitated by *shortening* of о and є. the English vowel-sound *au* (e.g. cough).

e.g. рогъ horn

о unaccented is sounded *a* or *ə*.

e.g. хорошо (khorošo) fine
пора (pará) time
слово (slóvo) word

є is sounded *yó*, i.e. *o* with a *yod*-sound. It *only* occurs in accented syllables, and *in writing is not distinguished* from *e*, except in elementary books. Rules are given in § 9 for the change from *e* to є.

e.g. ружьё (ružó) gun
несёте (nisyóte) ye carry
жёны (žóny) the wives
ёлушка (yóluškə) fir-tree

(6) *y* is sounded like *u* in "rule" or "pull"; *ю* Pronunciation is sounded like *u* in "universe," but of *y* and *ю*. shorter.

e.g. юбилéй (yubiléy) jubilee
несу (nisú) I carry

(7) *ъ* and *ь* are mute in modern Russian. The Pronunciation former indicates the hardness of a consonant of *ъ* and *ь*. the latter the softness, i.e. the absence or presence of a *yod* element.

e.g. былъ (byl') he was вязъ (vyas) elm
быль (byl') a tale вязь (vyás) bond

But in older Russian *ъ* had a value something like the *u* in "nut," and *ь* a soft short *i*-sound.

Hence the differences in conjugation and declension between родъ, рóда (родъ generation), and ротъ, рiá (ротъ mouth), терéть to rub, тру I rub.

This is because in all open syllables (i.e. ending in a vowel) *ъ* and *ь* became mute; in all closed syllables (i.e. ending in a consonant) *ъ* and *ь* disappeared when unaccented, or became *o* and *e* when accented. E.g. дънбó, дъпъ' (the bottom), now дно, донъ; рътъ', рыá (the mouth), now ротъ, рта; дънь', дънá (day), now день, днá [d'nyá].

Obviously then *ъ* and *ь* can only occur *medially* (in compounds) and *finally*.

Further, theoretically no Russian word ends in a consonant; the mute vowel is always added, even in foreign words.

e.g. Лондонъ London Брюссель Brussels

Latterly, there is a tendency to discard final *ъ*, when it is merely orthographical.

§ 3. THE CONSONANTS—VOICED AND UNVOICED.

The consonants must first be divided into *unvoiced* and *voiced* (e.g. in English *t* and *d*, *p* and *b*).

We then have:—

	<i>Labials.</i>	<i>Dentals.</i>	<i>Gutturals.</i>
Mutes unvoiced :	п	т	к
„ voiced :	б	д	г
Nasals :	м	н	—
Spirants unvoiced :	ф θ	—	х
„ voiced :	в	—	—

The remainder must be separately classed:—

	<i>Sibilants.</i>	<i>Compound consonants.</i>
Unvoiced :	с ш	ч ш, щ
Voiced :	з ж	—

Liquids: л and р.

§ 4. GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON THE CONSONANTS.

(1) There is no nasal guttural in Russian, like the English *ng*.
e.g. жёнка (žón-ka) little woman (нк as in pancake)

(2) When б, д, г, в, з, and ж are *final* consonants, they are sounded like п, т, к, ф, с, and ш.

e.g. рабъ	(rap)	slave
дѣдъ	(d'ět)	grandfather
рогъ	(rok)	horn
островъ	(óstrøf)	island
ложъ	(los)	lie
розъ	(ros)	of the roses

(3) When in compounds т precedes д, the first т is assimilated to д.

e.g. отда́ть (ad-dát') to give up

(4) When in the same syllable з precedes ж, or с precedes ш, the combination is sounded like жж, and шш.

e.g. позже (požži) later
высши́й (vyšši) highest

(5) ф is scarcely found in original Russian words; е is almost disused, and has the same phonetic value, just as ph in "phonetic" has the same sound as f in "fine."

(6) When к and г precede т in the same syllable, they are commonly sounded as х (kh).

e.g. ногти (nókhtya) of the nail
кто (khtō) who

(7) Other instances of assimilation (*these constitute rules*) :—

будто	(búttə)	as if
сде́лать	(zdělət')	to do
отъ зари	(adzari)	from the dawn
прóсъба	(próz'bə)	request
счастье	(ščást'e)	happiness
извóзчикъ	(izvoščik)	driver
что	(štō)	what
мáгкий	(myákhki)	soft
лéгче	(lékhče)	easier

Generally speaking the subsequent letter, voiced or unvoiced, attracts and assimilates the preceding.

(8) **ч** before **и** is sounded **ш**.

e.g. скучно (skúšnə) weary

(9) All consonants are sounded, *except* **д** and **т** in
-зди-; -сти-; **л** in солнце (sóntsi) sun; **ль** final after labials.

e.g. поздний (pózni) late
властный (vlásny) powerful
рубль (rup') rouble
мысль (mýs') thought

§ 5. THE “HARD” AND “SOFT” CONSONANTS.

Preliminary.

The vowels have already been divided into two sets *hard* and *soft*, i.e. plain and iotised, viz. :—

<i>Hard</i> :	а	э	ы	о	у	ъ
<i>Soft</i> :	я	е ъ	и	ё	ю	ь

Some consonants can be combined with any of the vowels. *These consonants are either hard or soft according as the vowel following is hard or soft.*

Other consonants are *naturally* “hard” or “soft,” and can *only* be used with certain vowels.

The strictest attention must be paid to these rules; as they explain the inflections, and dispose of most of the apparent exceptions.

(1) *The Labials.*

The labials **п**, **б**, **м**, **в** can *all* be either “hard” or “soft,” and can be used with *any* of the vowels.

But note that **л** is inserted after **п**, **б**, **м**, and **в** in

all "soft" nominal forms and in all verbal forms before ю and е.

e.g. ловить	(lavít')	to catch
ловлю	(lavlyú)	catch
торговать	(tørgøvát')	to trade
торговля	(tørgóvlya)	trade

Otherwise п, б, м, ф, в are sounded like English p, b, m, f, v, *subject to the general remarks in § 4 (2).*

(2) *The Dentals.*

The dentals can be used with *any* of the vowels. But they modify their pronunciation, and are changed in derivatives and verbal forms into palatals when "soft."

т, д and н "hard" are sounded as in English.

ть and дь are sounded midway between т and ѡ, something like the cockney "don't-yer know?" "did-you?"

нь is sounded *mouillé* like Spanish *ñ*, French and Italian *gn*.

These sounds are here denoted *t'*, *d'* and *ñ*.

Thus we have :—

Hard : та [тэ] ты то ту тъ

Soft : тя те ти тё тю тъ, sounded т'a, т'e, etc.

Soft derivatives : че чу

e.g. платить	(plat'ít')	to pay
плачу	(plačú)	I pay
молотить	(moløt'ít')	to thrash
молочу	(moløčú)	I thrash
молотятъ	(molót'it)	they thrash

Under identical conditions λ changes to $\bar{\lambda}$.

e.g. стыдиться (stydítsa)	to be ashamed
стыдится (stydyátsa)	they are ashamed
<i>but</i> стыжусь (styžús')	I am ashamed

Russian, however, has some Church Slavonic derivatives, in which under these same conditions **τ** became **щ**, and **ι**, **и**.

e.g. предъ (přet) before (preposition)
 прежде (přeždi) before (adverb)
 сладкий (slátki) sweet, сладче (slášče) sweeter
 родить (radíť) to bear, рождать (raždáť')

(3) *The Gutturals.*

The gutturals **к**, **г**, **х** are in Russian words *never* combined with **я**, **э**, **ы**, **ё**, **ю**, **ь**.

In Old Russian, before these vowels, they were regularly changed in *all* nominal and verbal inflections and in all derivatives to *и* and *ч*, *ж* and *ш* or *с* respectively. In modern Russian these changes only take place in verbs and derivatives.

The series of hard and soft gutturals is as follows:—

Hard : ка ко ку къ

Soft: ке ки

Soft Derivatives: ча че чи чо ог чё чу

or ци цу

Similarly with *r* and *x*; but *r* changes to *z*, and *x* to *m*.

Thus: га ге ги го гу гы

Derivatives жа же жи жо ог жё жу жы

xa xe xi xo xv xt

Thus in Russian the “hard” noun **волкъ** (volk) wolf, has a plural **волки**, but an adjective **волчий**.

Thus, too:—

Пráга (Prágə) Prague, has an adjective Пráжскíй
Богъ (Bokh) God, Божествó (Bažestvó) deity
скакáть (skakát') to leap, скаку́ (skačú) I leap (= кю)
верхъ (vérkh) above, вершина (viršína) the height

к is always like the English *k* except in cases noted in § 4 (6).

г is always like the English *g* in “got” or “give”: *except* (1) it is used to represent the foreign sound *h*, e.g. Голлáндíя (Gollándiya) Holland; also in the Russian word Госпóдъ (Hospód') Lord. (2) It is sounded like a voiced *x* before dentals, e.g. тогдá (takhdá) then; also in Богъ God, and names of towns ending in бургъ. (3) It is sounded **в** in the adjective gen. sing. termination -аро, -оро.

e.g. самогó (səməvó) of himself
дурнóго (durnóvə) of the bad man
дóбраго (dóbrəvə) of the good man

х is always sounded as in German *ach* or *ich*.

e.g. хата (khata) hut
хильй (khíly) feeble
сáхаръ (sákhər) sugar

(4) *The Sibilants and Compound Consonants.*

с, з, ш, ж, ч are *always* sounded like the consonants in the English words sword, zeal, short, leisure, church; subject to the general remarks in § 4 (2, 7, and 8).

с and з can be hard or soft and take any vowel. When "soft" they are sounded high on the palate, as though a sharp *i*-sound followed. They are here denoted as *š* and *ž*.

щ is a combination of *š* and *č*, which has to be practised.

ж, щ, and ц are always hard.

ч and щ always soft.

They can only be used with the following vowels:—

Hard: жа же жи жо ог жё жу жъ ог жъ
ша ше ши шё ог шо шу шъ ог шъ
ча че чи чо ог чё чу чъ

ю, я, ы are never used after ж, ч or щ.

с and з in soft derivatives change to щ and ж, e.g. здѣсь (zd'ěš) hear, близъ (bliz) near, здѣшній, близкій.

Soft: ча че чи чо ог чё чу чъ
ща ще щи що ог щё щу щъ

However, though in modern Russian the three sibilants щ, ж, ч are accounted hard, in older Russian щ and ж were soft; and the same rules of pronunciation in unaccented syllables apply to ща, жа, ча and ща as to я, viz. the vowel-value changes from a to i, and not a to ə.

e.g. часо́вня (česóvnja) clock-tower
жарá (z̄ra or žirá) heat
стагí (šegí) steps

п is always hard; it can, *unlike* any of the other sibilants, be followed by ы; and, *like* them, unaccented по always becomes, and is written, пе.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Instr.</i>	
e.g. отéцъ	отцóмъ	the father
(at'ets)	(atsóm)	
нéмецъ	нéмцемъ	the German
(němits)	(ně'mtsim)	

i.e. по should have been spelt пё.

Accented : шо жё ог жо чё ог чо до щё ог що

Unaccented : ше же че пе ще

(5) *The Liquids.*

л and р can be accompanied by any vowel.

The pronunciation of both лъ and ль is quite different from that of the English l.

лъ* is a guttural-sounded l produced by raising the back of the tongue and contracting the air-passage: the front part of the tongue is drawn back and rounded, whilst the lips are rounded. It may be imitated by pronouncing the English word *pull* deep in the throat.

ль is a palatal almost like the French l in "vil."

ръ is trilled, more like the Scotch r, рь is palatal with a faint *yod*-sound. These sounds can only be acquired by ear.

With regard to the liquids л and р two special rules of formation should be noted:—

In roots of the type градъ, гóродъ (grat, górt) town, the Church Slavonic had the monosyllabic form,

* In Polish written l.

Russian the dissyllabic; and as the Church language has greatly influenced Russian, the modern language has examples of both.

e.g. злáто, зóлoto (zlátø, zólato) gold; странá (stráná) land; сторона (stóroná) side; хранíть (khrañít') to preserve; хоронíть (khoróñít') to bury; гóродъ (górot) city; but Петрогráдъ (Pitragrád) Petrograd; берегъ (bérek) coast; but прибрéжье (pribréži) the foreshore; мóлодъ (mólod) young; младше (mládši) younger.

§ 6. CONGLOMERATED CONSONANTS WHEN FINAL.

Russian dislikes a word ending in a conglomeration of consonants. Thus Egypt is Егíпетъ (Yegípit), where етъ would in Old Russian have been written ытъ. [v. § 2 (6).]

Similarly, in neuter and feminine nouns, where the genitive plural is the root, e.g. дáмо, дáмы (d'ë'lo, d'ë'l'), -етъ, deed, a vowel о, е or ё is sometimes inserted, especially when the last consonant is л or р.

e.g. сестрá, сёстры or сестрёй (sistrá, syóstr or sistyór) sister; игрá (igrá) game, adjective игóрныи (igórny); свáдьба (svád'bø) wedding, свáдебъ (svádip); тётка (tyótka) aunt, тёточъ (tyótch); бáсня (básnya) fable, бáсень (básin); пáлка (pálkø) stick, пáлочкъ (páłčk).

§ 7. TRANSLITERATION INTO RUSSIAN.

The Russians, possessing their own special alphabet, have to transliterate foreign names and words. Within the limitations of their script they strive to be phonetic.

For *h* they use *r*.

e.g. Гáмбургъ Hamburg.

For the English *th* they substitute *т*.

e.g. Smith Смитъ.

For German *eu*, *äu* they use *ей*.

e.g. Лейхтенбергъ Leuchtenberg.

For the French *u*, German *ü*, they use *ю*.

e.g. Брюссель Brüssel (Brussels).

For the French *eu*, German *ö*, they use and write *ё*.

e.g. Гёте Goethe.

For the rest they try to represent sounds accurately.

e.g. джентльменъ gentleman, Брайтонъ Brighton,
комильфо comme il faut, Понкарэ Poincaré,
Тулонъ Toulon, Жанъ Jean, Динантъ Dinant,
Лувенъ Louvain, Брежанъ Brézéan.

All these foreign words, *if* they end in consonants or vowels that accord with Russian declensions, namely *ъ*, *ь*, *й*, *а*, *я*, *о* (neuter), *е* (neuter), are declined in the same way regularly.

e.g. Бэкономъ by Bacon, въ Лувенѣ in Louvain,
въ Динанѣ at Dinant (or Dinan). [v. § 23 (3).]

§ 8. RUSSIAN DIPHTHONGS.

Russian diphthongs are nearly all formed with *и*; and are *ай*, *ий*, sounded like *i* in "white," only broader; *еи* and *ъи* like *ey* in "grey," but longer; *ой*, *ёи* almost as English "boy"; and *уй*, *юи* like *ui* in "bruited."

The digraph *ay* denotes a true diphthong only in foreign words.

e.g. Брауншвейгъ Браупъ Braunschweig (Brunswick) Brown.

In Russian words (when found) the *a* and the *y* are separate vowels.

e.g. есауль a Cossack captain. Cf. in French
"сaoutchouc."

§ 9. THE CHANGE OF e TO ë.

The reader will have observed there is no symbol for *yo*, and the diaeresis over *e* is only used in elementary school-books.

The following rules will guide him in the pronunciation of *e* as *ye*, or *yo*.

The rule is that accented *e* preceding a hard consonant or *oxytone* is pronounced *ë*.

e.g. *село* (séló) village, plural *сёла*, *сель* (sól, šol) ;
плáчеть (pláčít) he weeps, but *растéть* (rastyót) he grows ; *ружье* (ružó) gun ; *смерть* (smert') death ; *ёлушка* (yóluska) , *ёлка* (yołka) fir-tree ; *мертвый* (myórtvy) dead ; *конемъ* (konyóm) by the horse ; *наше* (náši) our (neut. nom. sing.) ; *твое* (tvayó) thy (neut. nom. sing.).

Exceptions :—

e accented before a hard syllable is *not* pronounced *ë*—

(1) In words ending in *-ецъ*, e.g. *купéцъ* (kupéts) merchant. This is because *ц* was originally soft. [v. § 5 (4).]

(2) Before the adjectival terminations *-ский* and *-ний*, which are unaccented and were originally preceded by *ъ*, softening the consonant.

e.g. *женá* (žiná) wife, plur. *жены* (žóny), adj. *жéнский* (žénski).

(3) In foreign words.

e.g. *аптéка* (apt'ékə) apothecary's shop
билéтъ (bilét) ticket
депéша (d'epéšə) despatch

(4) In words from Church Slavonic.

e.g. **крест** (krest) cross

нéбо (nébo) heaven, but нéбó palate of mouth

надéжда (nad'éžda) hope, but надéжа (popularly)

And in some few other words, such as **дéрзкий** bold,
дéрзость boldness, **сквéрный** nasty, **учéбный** educational,
левъ lion (but **Лёвъ** the name Leo), **предмéтъ** subject.

These words may also be taken as an exercise in the application of the rules regarding pronunciation.

(5) In some words where e should be spelt è, which never undergoes this change, cf. § 2 (3).

e.g. **блескъ** brightness, **мелкій** little, **мéлочь** trifle,
вредъ damage(6) The preposition **безъ** without, which is generally proclitic.e.g. **безъ щитá** (bišščítá) without a shield(7) In the words **верхъ** above, **цéрковь** church,
пéрвый first, **четвéргъ** Thursday, **чéрпать** to draw up,
мéркнуть to grow dusk, **стéрва** carrion, **серпъ** sickle,
верба willow, **сéрдце** heart, **исчéзъ** vanished, **ужé** already,
вообщé in general.

è remains before a soft consonant:—

(1) In declensions and conjugations where other forms are hard and è is regular.

e.g. **несёшь** **несётъ, несёмъ, несёте**

thou carriest he, we, ye carry

утéсь precipice, на утéсь on the precipice

so берёза birch-tree, въ берёзѣ in the birch.

(2) In the instrumental singular of soft feminine nouns in **я**, like the hard nouns.

e.g. **грозою** (гроза threat)

землею (земля earth)

But **моёю**, **твоёю**, **своёю**, with e *not* ё.

Also before the adjectival termination **-кій**. As explained in § 33 (8), this **-кій** is a grammarian's misrendering of the former form **-кой**, and, this **к** being only visually soft, there is no real exception to the rule. So, too, **щека** cheek, **щёки** cheeks (because after gutturals **ы** is never used; v. § 5 (3)).

(3) In the following words **ѣ** becomes **ѣ**, like e, ё:—

звѣздá	star	звѣзды (plural)
---------------	------	------------------------

гнѣздó	nest	гнѣзда (plural)
---------------	------	------------------------

приобрѣсті	to obtain	приобрѣть* (past tense)
-------------------	-----------	--------------------------------

цвѣсті	to bloom	цвѣть (past tense)
---------------	----------	---------------------------

сѣдлó	saddle	сѣда (plural)
--------------	--------	----------------------

надѣвѣтъ	to dress	надѣванъ (past part. pass.)
-----------------	----------	------------------------------------

		позѣвывать to yawn
--	--	---------------------------

		запечатлѣнъ impressed
--	--	------------------------------

		смѣтка sally
--	--	---------------------

These words are merely misspelt.

In two words **я** is sounded ё:—

трясъ he shook, sounded **трѣсъ**

запрягъ he yoked (his horse), sounded **запрѣгъ**

Lastly, **еї**, the genitive of **она** she, is sometimes pronounced **еї** like the accusative (which is **еї**, sounded **иїйо**).

* And other compounds of this verb.

ACCIDENCE.

§ 10. THE PARTS OF SPEECH (части рѣчи).

The parts of speech in Russian are:—

<i>Declined</i>	(1) Nouns, <i>имя существительное</i>
	(2) Adjectives, <i>имя прилагательное</i>
	(3) Pronouns, <i>местоименіе</i>
<i>Conjugated</i>	(4) Verbs, <i>глаголь</i>
<i>Declined</i>	(5) Numerals, <i>имя числительное</i>
<i>Uninflected</i>	(6) Adverbs, <i>нарѣчіе</i>
	(7) Prepositions, <i>предлогъ</i>
	(8) Conjunctions, <i>союзъ</i>
	(9) Interjections, <i>междомѣтие</i>

There is *no article*.

Occasionally *одинъ* (one) is used as an *indefinite article*.

There is *no special form* for adverbs formed from *adjectives*. The neuter singular is used, except in adjectives in *-скій*, where the form is *-ски*.

The verbs only have one regularly formed tense, namely the present; and no other personal forms for past tenses, passives, moods, etc. These meanings are supplied by other simple modifications.

THE NOUN (*имя существительное*).

§ 11. PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

The Russian noun has three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter (роды мужской, женский, средний). But Russian presents no great difficulties in the ascertainment of gender, for—

(α) Nouns *proper or common* denoting males only, whatever the termination, are masculine ("natural" gender).

e.g. Ива́нъ John, Пе́тер Peter, Ива́нъко John, вое́вода general, сирота orphan (masc. or fem.).

(β) Nouns denoting females always have a feminine termination ("natural" and "grammatical" gender coincide).

(γ) The inflections of the masculine and neuter are identical, save in the nominative, vocative, and accusative singular and plural; just as in Latin *bellum* only differs from *equus* in these cases.

(δ) Generally speaking, the termination fixes the gender, unlike French or German, where the beginner has no guide, and can only learn by rote.

(i) Thus, nouns ending in ъ, ь and ѹ are masculine, *despite foreign etymology*.

e.g. столъ	table	шифть	writing
Царь	Tsar	университѣтъ	university
базисъ	basis	коњъ	horse
кризисъ	crisis	слонъ	elephant

соловѣй nightingale

(ii) Nouns ending in о, е, ё are neuter.

e.g. поле	field	солнце	sun
дѣло	fact	бѣлье	washing

(iii) Words ending in *a*, *я*, *ь* are feminine, *despite foreign etymology*.

e.g. *рука* hand *пуля* bullet

драма drama (*τὸ δρᾶμα*, *le drame*, *das Drama*, etc.)

With this apparent exception, *as in Latin and Greek*, that words in *a* and *я* of masculine signification are masculine, but declined like feminines. Unlike German or French, the gender primarily follows the meaning, not the termination.

e.g. *мужчина* man *слуга* man-servant

дядя uncle *Пётр* Peter (short for *Пётръ*)

юноша youth *убийца* murderer (masc. or fem.)

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Terminations:</i>	ъ	а	о
	ь	я	е
	и	ь	ия

§ 12. THE DECLENSIONS.

There are three declensions.

(1) Original *o*-stems: *masculines in* *тъ*, *ь* *and* *и*, *neuters in* *о*, *é*, *е*.

(2) Original *a*-stems: *feminines in* *a* *and* *я*.

(3) Original *i*-stems:

(*α*) One masculine word, *путь* path.

(*β*) Many feminines, principally abstracts in *-ость*, e.g. *скóрость* speed.

(*γ*) Two relics of older declensions:

мать, *мáтери*, cf. *mater*, *matris*, mother
дочь, *дóчери* daughter

(δ) Neuters in **мя**, **мени**.

e.g. **имя**, **имени** name, cf. Latin *nōmen*, *nōminis*; **съмя**,
съмени seed, cf. Latin *sēmen*, *sēminis* [v. § 2 (2)]

In Old Slavonic there was, as in Latin, an *u* declension (e.g. *manus*, *manūs*). This has disappeared, but has left traces in the irregular genitives and locatives in *y* of the first (Russian) declension: also in the masculine genitive plural termination *-овъ*.

§ 13. THE CASES.

There are seven cases.

1	(1) Nominative, Именительный падежъ
5	(2) Vocative, Звательный „
4	(3) Accusative, Винительный „
2	(4) Genitive, Родительный „
3	(5) Dative, Дательный „
	(6) Instrumental, Творительный „
	(7) Locative or Prepositional, Предложный падежъ

This list looks formidable, but, as with Apollyon's lion in "The Pilgrim's Progress," apprehensions vanish on a close approach.

The vocative only subsists in a few Church words, e.g. **Боже** from **Богъ** God, **Христé** from **Христόсъ** Christ, **Господъ** from **Господь** Lord, **Иисусé** from **Иисусъ** Jesus, **отче** from **отéцъ** father. [v. § 69, II.]

The objective is identical with the nominative in all nouns denoting inanimate, but with the genitive in all nouns denoting animate objects. This rule has one exception—for the one instance where the accusative has an independent form, namely, the accusative singular of nouns in **а** and **я**.

e.g. **Я ви́дѣ́хъ Царя** (genitive) **и Царíцу.**
 I saw the Tsar and the Tsaritsa.

Учитель прочéлъ вáшe сочинéніe.
 The teacher read your work,

The original Slav accusative has vanished (except in the singular of nouns in *a* and *я*), and has been replaced by the nominative or genitive forms.

In all negative sentences the object is in the genitive, whatever the noun, and without exception.

e.g. **Я не окончилъ своей работы.**

I have not finished my work; the genitive being *partitive* in meaning “nothing of my work.”

Я никогда не слыхалъ такіхъ сказокъ.

I never heard such stories.

The instrumental case marks the agent by whom, and the locative or prepositional is used to denote the place in which; in modern Russian *it cannot be used by itself*, but only with certain prepositions, hence it is often called the “prepositional.”

e.g. **Въ селѣ** (fsilë) in the village.

Я говорилъ о Николаѣ (ya govorilъ anikolâye).

I was talking of Nicholas.

Thus, virtually, there are only five separate forms for the cases—nominative, genitive, dative, instrumental, and locative.

§ 14. THE NUMBERS.

There are two numbers, singular and plural (единственное число, множественное число). The forms are almost identical for masculine nouns in *ъ*, *ь*, *й*, and feminines in *а*, *я*; neuters in *о*, *е*, *ё* only differ in forming the nominative and accusative plural in *а*, *я*, as in Latin.

In ancient Russian there was a dual, but this is obsolete. Some few forms of it survive as irregularities. [v. § 24 (3).]

The plural of nouns in *и*, of the third declension, is slightly different.

§ 15. HARD AND SOFT NOUNS.

All nouns of the first and second declensions are "hard" or "soft" throughout: i.e. there is a double scheme of declension in "hard" or "soft" vowels, according as the root is hard or soft.

Those who have learnt the rules in § 3 and § 5 will find no difficulty in grasping this fundamental difference, which underlies all Russian inflections.

Nouns of the Ⅲ declension, the third, are naturally all "soft."

SCHEME OF DECLENSIONS.

Sing.	First Declension.				Second Declension.		Third Declension.	
	Masculine.		Neuter.		Feminine.		Fem.	Neut.
	Hard.	Soft.	Hard.	Soft.	Hard.	Soft.		
Nom.	ъ	ъ	о	е ё	а	я	ъ	мя
Acc.	Like N. or G.		о	е ё	у	ю	ъ	мя
Gen.	а [у]	я [ю]	а	я	ы	и	и	мени
Dat.	у	ю	у	ю	ѣ	ѣ	и	мени
Instr.	омъ	емъ	омъ	емъ	ою	сю	ю	менемъ
Loc.	ѣ [у]	ѣ [ю]	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	ѣ	и	мени
Plur.								
Nom.	ы	и	а	я	ы	и	и	мена
Acc.	Like N. or G.		а	я	Like N. or G.		и	мена
Gen.	овъ	ей	евъ	ей	ъ	ѣй	ей	менъ
Dat.	амъ	ямъ	амъ	ямъ	амъ	ямъ	амъ	менамъ
Instr.	ами	ями	ами	ями	ами	ями	ьми	менами
Loc.	ахъ	яхъ	ахъ	яхъ	ахъ	яхъ	ахъ	менахъ

It will be observed that in the plurals there is scarcely any divergence.

§ 16. EXAMPLES OF MASCULINE NOUNS IN THE
FIRST DECLENSION (первое склонение).

Singular.

	tooth	work	egy
N. V.	зубъ	трудъ	крикъ
Acc.	зубъ	трудъ	крикъ
Gen.	зуба	трудá	крика
Dat.	зубу	труду	крику
Instr.	зубомъ	трудомъ	крикомъ
Loc.	зубѣ	трудѣ	крикѣ

Plural.

	зубы	труды	крики
N. V.	зубы	труды	крики
Acc.	зубы	труды	крики
Gen.	зубовъ	трудовъ	криковъ
Dat.	зубамъ	трудамъ	крикамъ
Instr.	зубами	трудами	криками
Loc.	зубахъ	трудахъ	крикахъ

Singular.

	key	a German	march
N. V.	ключъ	нѣмецъ	маршъ
Acc.	ключъ	нѣмца	маршъ
Gen.	ключá	нѣмца	мáрша
Dat.	ключу	нѣмцу	мáршу
Instr.	ключомъ	нѣмцемъ	мáршемъ
Loc.	ключѣ	нѣмцѣ	мáршѣ

Plural.

	ключи	нѣмцы	мáрши
N. V.	ключи	нѣмцевъ	мáрши
Acc.	ключи	нѣмцевъ	мáршей
Gen.	ключей	нѣмцевъ	мáршей
Dat.	ключамъ	нѣмцамъ	мáршамъ
Instr.	ключами	нѣмцами	мáршами
Loc.	ключахъ	нѣмцахъ	мáршахъ

These six examples illustrate regular forms in "hard" consonants. *Please observe the variations necessary after gutturals and palatals, and re-read § 5 (3) and (4). The rules in § 5 apply to all declensions and conjugations.* Thus *ключамъ* is sounded *klučám*, *марши* *mársy*, etc.

Examples of Weak Stems.

<i>Singular.</i>				
	hero	horse	battle	knife (<i>is originally soft</i>)
N. V.	геро́й	ко́нь	бо́й	но́жъ
Acc.	геро́я	ко́нъ	бо́й	но́жъ
Gen.	геро́я	ко́нъ	бо́й	но́жá
Dat.	геро́ю	ко́ню	бо́ю	но́жú
Instr.	геро́емъ	ко́нёмъ	бо́емъ	но́жомъ
Loc.	геро́ю	ко́нъ	бо́й	но́жъ
<i>Plural.</i>				
N. V.	геро́и	ко́ни	бо́и	но́жи
Acc.	геро́евъ	ко́нёй	бо́и	но́жи
Gen.	геро́евъ	ко́нёй	бо́евъ	но́жéй
Dat.	геро́ямъ	ко́нямъ	бо́имъ	но́жамъ
Instr.	геро́ими	ко́нями	бо́ими	но́жами
Loc.	геро́яхъ	ко́няхъ	бо́ихъ	но́жахъ

These examples should be learnt by heart; they are explained, and rules stated, in § 5 (3) and (4).

§ 17. EXAMPLES OF NEUTER NOUNS OF FIRST
DECENSION.

Hard Stems.

<i>Singular.</i>				
	yoke	village	quality	
N. V. A.	и́го	се́ло	ка́чество	
Gen.	и́га	се́ла	ка́чества	
Dat.	и́гу	се́лу	ка́честву	
Instr.	и́гомъ	се́ломъ	ка́чествомъ	
Loc.	и́гъ	се́ль	ка́чествъ	

<i>Plural.</i>			
N. V. A.	и́га	сёла	ка́чества
Gen.	и́гъ	сёль	ка́чествъ
Dat.	и́гамъ	сёламъ	ка́чествамъ
Instr.	и́гами	сёлами	ка́чествами
Loc.	и́гахъ	сёлахъ	ка́чествахъ

Soft and Sibilant Stems.

<i>Singular.</i>			
N. V. A.	сеа	school	
Gen.	мóре	учи́лище	
Dat.	мóри	учи́лиша	
Instr.	мóремъ	учи́лишемъ	
Loc.	мóрѣ	учи́лишѣ	

<i>Plural.</i>			
N. V. A.	морí	учи́лища	
Gen.	морéй	учи́лишъ	
Dat.	морáмъ	учи́лишамъ	
Instr.	морáми	учи́лишами	
Loc.	морáхъ	учи́лишахъ	

<i>Singular.</i>			
N. V. A.	гун	knowledge	
Gen.	ружьé	знánie	
Dat.	ружы́	знávия	
Instr.	ружьо́	знáнию	
Loc.	ружьёмъ	знáviemъ	

<i>Plural.</i>			
N. V. A.	рúжья	знávия	
Gen.	рúжей	знávий	
Dat.	рúжымъ	знávиямъ	
Instr.	рúжьами	знávиями	
Loc.	рúжьяхъ	знávияхъ	

These examples should be learnt by heart; a discussion of them will be found in § 27.

§ 18. EXAMPLES OF THE SECOND DECLENSION (второé склонение) IN *a* AND *и*.

The scheme for these nouns is:—

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V.	а	и	ы	и
Acc.	у	ю	Like N. or G. [v. § 13]	
Gen.	ы	и	ъ	ь
Dat.	ѣ	ѣ	амъ	ямъ
Instr.	ю	ой*	ами	ями
Loc.	ѣ	ѣ	ахъ	яхъ

Examples:—

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Sibilant.</i>	
	Hard.	Soft.	Hard.	Soft.
N. V.	widow	hand	bullet	soul
	вдовá	рукá	пúля	душá
Acc.	вдову	руку	пúлю	дúшу
Gen.	вдовы	рукъ	пúли	душы
Instr.	вдовою	рукóю	пúлею	душóю
D. L.	вдовѣ	рукѣ	пúлѣ	душѣ
	<i>Plural.</i>			
	рúки	пúли	душы	
N. V.	вдовы	рукы	пúли	душъ
Acc.	вдовъ	рукъ	пúль	душъ
Gen.	вдовъ	рукъ	пúль	душъ
Instr.	вдовáми	рукáми	пúлями	душáми
Dat.	вдовáмъ	рукáмъ	пúлямъ	душáмъ
Loc.	вдовáхъ	рукáхъ	пúляхъ	душáхъ
	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Fricative.</i>	
	Sibilant.	Hard.	Fricative.	Fricative.
N. V.	candle	tear	empress	food
	свѣчá	слезá	царíца	пíща
Acc.	свѣчу	слезу	царíцу	пíшу
Gen.	свѣчы	слезы	царíцы	пíщи
Instr.	{ свѣчёю } { свѣчóю }	слезю	царíцею	пíщею
D. L.	свѣчѣ	слезѣ	царíцѣ	пíшѣ

* Contracted form.

Plural.

N. V.	свѣ́чи	слёзы	цары́цы
Acc.	свѣ́чи	слёзы	цары́цъ
Gen.	свѣ́чъ	слёзъ	цары́цъ
Instr.	свѣ́чами	слезами	цары́цами
Dat.	свѣ́чамъ	слезамъ	цары́цамъ
Loc.	свѣ́чакъ	слезакъ	цары́цахъ

For pronunciation consult §§ 2 (2), 5 (3), 5 (4).

*Soft and Vocalic Stems.**Singular.*

	earth	lightning	family
N. V.	земл́	молнія	семь
Acc.	землю	молнію	семью
Gen.	земл́	молнія	семь
Instr.	землёю	молнію	семьёю
D. L.	землѣ	молніи	семь

Plural.

	земли	молніи	семьи
N. V.	земли	молніи	семей
Acc.	земель	молній	семей
Gen.	землами	молніями	семьями
Dat.	земламъ	молніямъ	семьямъ
Loc.	землакъ	молніяхъ	семьяхъ

Examples of Masc. in a, я.

Singular.

Hard.

N. V.	стáроста	elder	дáдя	uncle
Acc.	стáросту		дáдю	
Gen.	стáросты		дáди	
Instr.	стáростою		дáдею	
D. L.	стáростѣ		дáдѣ	

<i>Plural.</i>		
N. V.	стáрости	дáди
Acc.	стáрость	дáдей
Gen.	стáрость	дáдей
Instr.	стáростами	дáдями
Dat.	стáростамъ	дáдямъ
Loc.	стáростахъ	дáдяхъ

These examples should be learnt by heart. Consult § 2 (5), § 9, and § 11.

§ 19. THIRD DECLENSION (трéтье склонéнiе) :
NOUNS IN **и** and **мя**.

These nouns are always soft ; most of the terminations are in **и**.*

MASCULINE.

Only one example survives :—

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N. V. A.	путь path	N. V. A.	путí
G. D. L.	путí	Gen.	путéй
Instr.	путéмъ	Dat.	путáмъ
		Instr.	путáми
		Loc.	путáхъ

Formerly there were others of this type ; e.g. **день** day, now a soft masc. of the first declension. But “after midday” is “пo-
полудни” (*popoludni*) ; **дни** being the old genitive.

§ 20. THIRD DECLENSION IN **и** : FEMININES.

These are numerous and important. In form they are liable to confusion with soft masculines like **конь** horse.

* Just like the Latin *turris* ; with which type they correspond philologically.

E.g.

Singular.

{ N. V. Acc. Gen. Dat. (Loc. Instr.	bone	horse	door
	кость	лошадь	дверь
	кость	лошадь	
	кости	лошади	
	кости	лошади	
	костью	лошадью	
	костю	лошадию	

Plural.

N. V. Acc. Gen. Dat. Instr. Loc.	кости	лошади	Declined like
	кости	лошадей	
	костей	лошадей	
	костямъ	лошадямъ	
	костымъ	лошадьмъ	
	костыхъ	лошадыхъ	

Singular.

{ N. V. Acc. Gen. Dat. (Loc. Instr.	fortress	care
	крепость	осторожность
	крепость	осторожность
	крепости	осторожности
	крепости	осторожности
	крепостью	осторожностью

Plural.

N. V. Acc. Gen. Dat. Instr. Loc.	крепости		
	крепости		
	крепостей		
	крепостямъ		
	крепостымъ		
	крепостяхъ		

Observe звѣрь wild beast, which is now masculine
has звѣрьмъ instr. plural, besides звѣрьми.

§ 21. THIRD DECLENSION IN И: NEUTERS IN МЯ.
Consult § 2 (2).

Those who know Latin grammar have learnt the forms like *nōmen*, *nōminis*, *sēmen*, *sēminis*.

The Russian words of this type are very similar. E.g.

<i>Sing.</i>	name	flame	tribe	seed
Nom. Voc. Acc.	имя	пламя	племя	семя*
Gen. Dat. Loc.	имени			
Instr.	именемъ			
<i>Plur.</i>				
Nom. Voc. Acc.	именá			
Gen.	имёнъ			
Dat.	именамъ			
Instr.	именами			
Loc.	именахъ			
		Like имя		
			Like имя	
				Like имя, but gen. plural съмънъ

§ 22. THIRD DECLENSION: REMAINS OF OLDER FORMS.

(1) *Feminine*: There are only two.

<i>Singular.</i>		
Nom. Voc.	mother	daughter
A. G. D. L.	мать	дочь
Instr.	мáтери	дочери
	мáтерью	дочерью
<i>Plural.</i>		
Nom. Voc.	мáтери	дочери
Acc. Gen.	матерéй	дочерéй
Dat.	матерéмъ	дочерéмъ
Instr.	{ матерáми { матерымъ	{ дочерáми { дочерымъ
Loc.	матерáхъ	дочерáхъ

Cf. *máter*, *mátris*; *μήτηρ*, *μητρός*; *θυγάτηρ*, *θυγατρός*.

* Cf. Latin *sēmen*.

(2) *Neuter*: There is only one, and this noun is irregular.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. Voc. Acc.	дитя	Nom. Voc.	дити
Gen. Dat. Loc.	дитяти	Acc. Gen.	диттей
Instr.	диттю	Dat.	диттамъ
		Inst.	диттмъ
			(and диттами)
		Loc.	диттяхъ

.§ 23. (1) The foregoing sections, 16 to 22, illustrate the rules of Russian declension.

Some space must still be devoted to *apparent* exceptions (for euphonic reasons), to *true* exceptions (which are very few), and the principles of the accentuation in each class.

It is assumed that the reader has mastered §§ 2-6 and § 9, which supply the phonetic basis, the fundamental laws of Russian orthography.

(2) Some nouns are used only in the plural. These are masculine, feminine or neuter, according as their genitive assigns them to one or other of the declensions.

e.g. **ножницы**, **ножницъ**, etc., fem., scissors
щипцы, **щипцъ**, etc., masc., pincers
ворота, **воротъ**, etc., neut., gates

(3) Some nouns are indeclinable; namely, those which do *not* end in **ъ**, **ь**, **и**, **а**, **я** (m. and f.), and **о**, **е** (neut.). Such are (i) a few Russian words, e.g. **кофе** coffee. (ii) Many foreign words, especially proper names; e.g. **Сарты** Sarti, **Петрүччо** Petruccio, **Лубэ** Loubet, **Мартелло** Martello. The case in which these nouns stand must be understood from the context; e.g. **въ поэзія** **Лонгфелло** in

Longfellow's poetry, во врёмя президентства Карно in the Presidency of Carnot. On the other hand, names like Ренанъ Renan, Динантъ Dinant, Аахенъ Aix-la-Chapelle, Шопенъ Chopin, are declined like ordinary nouns. [v. § 7.] E.g. Речь сэра Эдуарда Грея, the speech of Sir Edward Grey (Грей).

§ 24. REMARKS ON THE MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

(1) In old Slavonic, as in Latin, there used to be a declension in "u," e.g. *mānus*, *manūs*; e.g. in Russian сынъ son (Gothic *sunus*). This declension has completely vanished, but has left traces in the following irregularities:—

(a) Some nouns, denoting materials, have mostly unaccented genitive in -у, -ю.

e.g. чáю from чай tea

сáхару from сáхаръ sugar

нарóду from нарóдъ people

e.g. чáшка чáю a cup of tea, but этóть родъ сáхара this sort of sugar.

e.g. мнóго нарóду many people, характеръ а́нглiй-скаго нарóда the character of the English people.

Also in the phrases:—

съ вéрху from on high

съ нíзу from beneath

безъ тóлку senseless

изъ вíду out of sight

and a few others.

(β) Some *monosyllables* have a locative in -у, -ю *accented*, used with *въ* in, на on.

e.g. *въ лѣсѣ* in the forest, but *при лѣсѣ* at the wood
въ году in the year
въ бою in the fight
въ краю on the edge
на льду on the ice
въ снѣгу in the snow
въ раю in Paradise
на берегу on the shore [v. § 5 (5).]

(γ) *сынъ* son, *кумъ* godfather, and others, insert the syllable -овъ- into the plural.

e.g. [сыны sons (poetical)] *сыновы*
кумъ godfather *кумовы*
зять son-in-law *зятевы*
сватъ marriage-broker *сватовы*

(δ) It is in the nouns in "u" that the genitive plural -овъ originated; it has spread to nearly all masculine stems.

(2) Some nouns form their plural in -ы; this is really an old feminine collective form.

e.g. *брать* brother, *братья* (gen. *братьевъ*, dat. *братьимъ*, instr. *братьими*, loc. *братьяхъ*)
камень stone, *каме́нья* stones, *камни* single stones
броса́ть камни, not *каме́ньями*, to stone a man
сту́лья a chair, *сту́лья*
сукъ a bough, *сучы* [v. § 5 (3).]
уго́ль coal, *уго́ль*

зубъ tooth, зубы teeth (of a machine), зубы teeth (of a man)

листъ leaf, листы leaves of a tree, листы (leaves of paper)

другъ friend, друзы (gen. друзей)

князъ prince, князы (gen. князей)

мужъ husband, мужы (gen. мужей)

зять son-in-law, зяты (gen. зятей), also зятевъ
деверь the husband's brother, деверь (gen. деверей)

(3) Some masculine nouns form their plural in -а.

e.g. рукавъ	sleeve	рукава
берегъ	shore	берега
глазъ	eye	глаза
пологъ	bed-canopy	полога
рогъ	horn	рога
колоколъ	bell	колокола

It will be observed most of these are essentially *duals* in meaning; this *а* is the old *dual*, *Nom.* and *Acc.* Cf. § 26 (5) (8).

This *а* ending has been extended to a few nouns—

e.g. гбродъ	town	города
лѣсъ	wood	лѣса
голосъ	voice	голоса
домъ	house	дома

as well as most loan-words in -еръ and -оръ—

e.g. докторъ	doctor	доктора
профессоръ	professor	профессора
кучеръ	coachman	кучеры
but актёръ	actor (French <i>acteur</i>)	актёры
императоръ	Emperor	императоры

Other instances are:—

образъ	shapes	образы	shapes	образа	images
хлѣбъ	bread	хлѣбы	loaves	хлѣба	corn
цвѣтъ	colour	цвѣты	flowers	цвѣта	colours
мѣхъ	bellows	мѣхъ			
мѣхъ	fur	мѣхъ			
орденъ	the order	ордены	the orders	ордена	the orders
		(e.g. religious)		(decorations)	

(4) The genitive plural of masculines in -ъ originally ended in -ъ, and was only accentually differentiated from the nominative. This genitive plural in -ъ still obtains in the neuters and feminines. [v. § 24 (1) (δ).]

Hence it is (v. paradigm § 15) that masculines ending in a weak consonant form the genitive plural in -ей; e.g. царь, царя, царьъ, which became царьъ, and was pronounced and spelled царей in Russian, after ъ and ъ had become mute.

So, too, words in -жъ, -шъ (e.g. ножъ knife, ножа, ножей), because [v. § 5 (4)] ж and ш, and ч and щ were all originally soft.

But ѿ is regarded as a consonantal ending, and takes -евъ; e.g. строй construction, строевъ.

Some masculine nouns still have a genitive plural in -ъ,

e.g.			Gen. plur.
волосъ	hair	волосъ	
разъ	time (so many times)	разъ	
сарапъ	boot	сарапъ	
драгунъ	dragoon	драгунъ	
турокъ	Turk	турокъ	
grenadёръ	grenadier	grenadёръ	
глазъ	eye	глазъ	
рѣкрутъ	recruit	рѣкрутъ	

as well as all those which form their nominative singular in **-инъ**, and are thus distinguished by diversifying the nominative.

Lastly, masculine nouns of measurement—

e.g. **фунтъ** a pound (= 90 lb. avoirdupois)

сажень a lineal measure (= 7 feet)

make their genitive plural thus: **фунтъ, сажень.**

(5) Nom. sing. in **-инъ**.

Many words, especially words descriptive of race, creed, etc., have a *singular* with the adjectival form **-инъ** [v. § 34 (2)], but drop the **-инъ** in the plural, forming the nom. plural in **-е** or **-а**. E.g.

	Roman	Christian	Englishman
Nom. sing.	Римлянинъ	христіанінъ	Англичанінъ
Gen. sing.	Римлянина	христіаніна	Англичаніна
Nom. plur.	Римляне	христіяне	Англичане
Gen. plur.	Римлянъ	христіяни	Англичанъ

	Tatar	master	wife's brother
Nom. sing.	татаринъ	баринъ	шуринъ
Gen. sing.	татарина	бáрина	шúрина
Nom. plur.	{ татары } татаре	бáре	шурый
Gen. plur.	татáръ	баръ	шурьёвъ

хозинъ (master of the house) is not quite regular. In the *singular*, **хозинъ**, **хозина**, etc.

Plural Nom. Voc.	хози́ева	[cf. § 24 (1) (γ)]
„ Acc. Gen.	хози́евъ	
„ Dat. Instr. Loc.	хози́ев-, ами, ахъ	

In this connection [v. § 34 (2)] the possessive adjectives in **-инъ** used as *proper names* are declined as stated in that section, and not like the above.

(6) Irregular formations.

Singular.

	Christ	The Lord
Nom.	Христо́сь	Госпóдь (Haspód')
Voc.	Христé	Гóсподи
Gen.	Христá	Гóспода
Dat.	Христú	Гóсподу
Instr.	Христóмъ	Гóсподомъ
Loc.	Христъ	Гóсподъ

neighbour

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom. Voc.	сосéдъ	сосéди	чóртъ*	чéрти
Acc.	сосéда	сосéдей	чóрта	чéртéй
Gen.	etc.	чóрь, soft stem.	чóрта	
Dat.			чóрту	
Instr.			чóртомъ	
Loc.			чóртъ	

человéкъ, man (in general: мужъ husband, мужчíна male), generally forms its plural in людí (declined like a plural of an и stem).

When the plural is used, the genitive plural is **человéкъ**, e.g. двáдцать **человéкъ** twenty men.

§ 25. ACCENTUATION OF THE MASCULINE NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Most masculine nouns retain the accent of the nominative; but, as the original nominative termination ъ has become mute, and cannot be accented, some nouns seem to throw the accent forward on to the other terminations.

* Not to be confused with чéрпá (fem.) feature.

E.g. *человéкъ* man, *саpáй* barn, *брáть* brother, retain the accent on the syllable accented in the nominative, i.e. on the *stein*; e.g. *человéкомъ*, *саpáю*, *брáта*.

No general rule can explain the variance of the accent; the following principles may be a guide.

I. The following derivatives were originally accented on the termination *ъ*, and therefore throw the accent forward on to the other terminations:—

- (1) All names in *-íпъ*, e.g. *Карамзíнъ* Karamzín.
- (2) All words in *-éцъ*, e.g. *куpéцъ* merchant.
- (3) All derivatives in *-áкъ*,* *-íкъ*, *-íкъ*, *-óкъ*, *-éжъ*, *-áчъ*; e.g. *дурáкъ* fool, *старíкъ* old man, *падéжъ* case, *пáячъ* executioner, *кусóкъ* morsel, *скриpáчъ* fiddler, *тюфíкъ* mattress.
- (4) All derivatives in *-уnъ*, *-áръ* (except *госудáръ* Lord, as a royal title, *госудáра*), *-ýръ*, *-íръ*, and the months in *-бръ*; e.g. *девíтаго октябрá* on the 9th October, *табóнъ* herd of horses, *столíръ* carpenter, *пузíръ* bellows; but *пáнцыръ* (*пáнцыра*) cuirass.
- (5) A very large number of words, such as *столъ* table, *быкъ* ox, *женихъ* bridegroom, *плодъ* fruit, *полкъ* regiment, *языкъ* tongue, *пáтухъ* cock. Nothing but reading and practice can determine which these are.

II. Secondly, many words retain the accent as in the nominative in the singular, but throw it forward in the plural; e.g. *садъ* garden, *чинъ* rank, *шагъ* step.

* *сéзжeнъ* Of the Greek accent *акóс*, *иkóс*.

III. Thirdly, some words throw the accent forward off to the termination in the genitive plural and following cases.

e.g.	богъ	god	богóвъ
	воръ	thief	ворáми
	гвоздъ	nail	гвоздáми
	кругъ	circle	кругáмъ
	лебедь	swan	о лебедíхъ

In all cases the original accent on the nominative must be learnt from the dictionary or a teacher; *as a general rule, a masculine noun that throws its accent forward on the genitive singular throws it forward on to all the terminations; and a noun not accented on the last syllable retains the same accent throughout.*

This section must be read subject to all the rules stated in § 24 and § 9.

§ 26. REMARKS ON THE NEUTER NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Except, in so far as the masculine nouns have more inflections, the special remarks in § 24 apply to neuters as well.

(1) In § 24 (4) it was observed that all masculine nouns of the first declension ending in a consonant + ь or -жъ, -шъ, -щъ, -чъ (which were all originally soft, v. § 5 (4)), form the genitive plural in -еü. The same applies to all soft neuter nouns in -е, and the same arguments hold good.

e.g. поле field полéй

But, with this difference, neuters in -но, -не, -шо, -ще, -шо, -ше, -чо, -че, form the genitive plural in ъ.

e.g. плечо shoulder	плечь [v. also § 26 (5) (β).]
жилыше home	жилыщъ
лицо face	лицъ

Nouns in -ъё form the genitive plural in -ей, the reason being that the ё is inserted to divide the syllables, so that such words come under the general rule of neuters ending in ё.

e.g. ружъё gun	ружей
питьё drink	питей

(2) Neuters in -ie, and feminines in -иа (these terminations being unaccented) spell the ё terminations as they are sounded, viz. и.

e.g. понима́ние the understanding
Loc. о понима́ни

These nouns in -ie are very common, being the regular verbal nouns formed from the infinitives to express the abstract idea of the verb.

e.g. вы́ражить to express, выраже́ние the expressing
имъть to own, имъни the estate

The *genitive plural* in nouns in -ie and -иа is -ии.

e.g. Я не хочу́ его́ имъни
Ya ne khačú yivó iměni
I do not desire his property

In poetry and colloquial speech such nouns are contracted, e.g. желáнье for желáниe.

Some such nouns form a genitive plural in ьевъ, e.g. плáтье clothing, плáтьевъ; кúшанье food, кúшаньевъ; but these are exceptions, for such nouns are in reality paroxytone collectives, the old collective termination being -ьё, plural -ы.

These nouns are *only* found in the contracted form, and may be compared with the plurals друзъ, братья [v. § 24 (2)].

(3) *Mixed masculine and neuter declension.*

Augmentative nouns in -ище, e.g. селó village, се́лище a big village, form their plural like that of the soft masculine nouns, e.g. конь. Thus се́лиши, се́лишай, etc. But клáбзище, cemetery, is regular; the augmentative sense has disappeared.

So, too, *diminutives* in -ко.

e.g. словéчко a little word

Pl. Nom. Voc. Acc. словéчки

Gen. словéчекъ [v. § 6.]

Observe, too, очкó, очкí (little eyes), now spectacles; очкóвъ, and so on.

Some other miscellaneous examples are:—

сóлнце sun сóлница and -ы сóлнцевъ

дно bottom дны донъ

йблоко apple яблоки яблокъ or яблоковъ

(4) *Plurals in -ья* [v. § 24 (2)].

Neuter words capable of a collective meaning have a collective plural like the masculine nouns.

e.g. дрéво tree дерéвья

перó feather пéры

крыло wing крыла and крылья

Observe.—**колено**, knee, has three meanings and three plurals: (1) **колено́вá** family or race; (2) **колено́н**, **колено́нéй** knees; (3) **колено́пъя**, **колено́вьевъ** knots on wood.

(5) *Irregular forms.*

These may conveniently be considered under two heads: (a) obsolete declensions, of which a few relics subsist; (B) dual forms.

(a) *Obsolete forms.*

Нéбо heaven, **чудо** miracle, **слóво** word, **тýло** body, **кóло** wheel, formerly belonged to the same declension as the Latin *genus, generis*, Greek *νéφος, νéφους (νéφεσος)*. Hence the adjectival forms are: **словéсный** literary, **небéсный** heavenly, **чудéсный** wonderful, **тýмéсный** corporeal, and **колёсный** pertaining to a wheel.

Of all these forms only two survive in regular use: **чудо**, **чудесá**, **чудéсь** [not **чудéсь**, cf. § 9, exception (4)]; and **нéбо**, **небесá**, **небéсь** [not **небéсь**].

The modern Russian for wheel is **колесо**, plural **колёса**.

Слóво and **тýло** are regular like **дéло**.

In words denoting the young of animals a plural **-ёнка** is still used, the singular being **-ёнокъ**.

e.g. котёнокъ	kitten	котýта, котáть
жеребёнокъ	colt	жеребýта, жеребáть
волчёнокъ	wolf-cub	волчáта, волчáть
[v. § 5 (3).]		

So, too, **цыплёнка** chickens, **ребёнка** children (in lofty language, used as the plural of **ребёнокъ**), etc., and also **внукъ** grandson, **внучатá** great grand-children.

(8) *Dual forms.*

óко	eye (poetical only)	óчи, очéй
úхо	ear	úши, ушéй
koléño	knee	koléни, koléней
sto	one hundred	dvésti two hundred
plechó	shoulder	pléchi, plechъ

§ 27. ACCENTUATION OF THE NEUTER NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

As in all cases the accent on the nominative must be ascertained from the dictionary or the teacher.

Dissyllabic words reverse the accent in the plural.

e.g. тъло	body	тъ́ла
móre	sea	мор́
celó	village	сёла [v. § 9.]
rebró	rib	рёбра
dérevo	tree	дерéвья
пíсъмó	letter	пíсъма, пíсемъ
právó	right	правá
sérdce	heart	сердцá
Except блóдо	vessel	блóда
гбрó	throat	гбрó

Trisyllabic nouns, if oxytone, have the plural paroxytone; if the stem is accented, make the plural oxytone.

e.g. колесó	wheel	колéса
полотно	cloth	полóтна
зéркало	mirror	зéркаль, зéркаль ог зéркаль
кру́жево	lace	кру́жевá, кру́жевъ
óзеро	lake	озерá ог озёра

Derivative nouns in *-ie*, *-ство*, retain the same accent.

e.g. существо́	being	существо́
знáніе	knowledge	знáнія
правýтельство	administration	правýтельства

§ 28. REMARKS ON THE SECOND DECLENSION.

(1) Genitive plural in *-ъ* and *-ей*.

Practically the same conditions obtain as with the neuters. [v. § 26 (1).]

Soft nouns in *-я* and *-ча*, *-ша* and *-жа*, regularly form the genitive plural in *-ъ* and *-чъ*, and the instrumental singular in *-ёю*, *-ею*; *-чёю*, *-чею*; *-шёю*, *-шею*; *-жёю*, *-жею*. [v. § 5 (4).] So, too, nouns in *-ча* preceded by a vowel: instrumental singular *-цóю*, *-цею*; genitive plural *-цъ*.

But nouns in *-ча*, *-жа*, *-ша*, when preceded by a consonant, form the genitive plural in *-ей*: and the same applies to nouns in *-ща*.

e.g. вéкша	squirrel	вéкшей
саранчá	grasshopper	саранчéй
Similarly: дíдя	uncle	дíдей
ноздрý	nostril	ноздрéй
доля	lot	доль and долéй
зарý	dawn*	зарь and зарéй

Nouns in *-я* also have a genitive plural in *-ей* regularly, when accented; *-ий* unaccented.

e.g. лгúны	liar	лгúний
статьи	article	статьей
гóстя	guest (fem.)	гóстий
свины	pig	свинéй

* Also the evening half-light.

(2) In ordinary speech and in poetry the instrumental singular *-ю*, *-ю* is contracted to *-ой* and *-ей*, and often thus written.

(3) Many nouns in the second declension are masculine, *because of their meaning*, as in Latin *agricola*.

e.g. *дядя* uncle, *юноша* youth, *Саша* diminutive of *Александръ*, *Коля* diminutive of *Николай*, *Петя* diminutive of *Петръ*, *слу́гá* servant (feminine form *служáнка*), *сиротá* orphan, masc. or fem. according to meaning, *судáй* judge, *бродáга* vagabond.

(4) There are very many derivative nouns in *-ия*, amongst them the loan-words from the Latin *tio*, e.g. *нація* nation.

The rule regarding these is the same as with the derivative neuters in *-ie* [v. § 26 (2)], namely that the ё forms are written and sounded ё.

e.g. *áрмія* army, въ *áрміи* in the army, *áрмій* genitive plural; so, too, *Армéнія* Armenia, *Англія* England, *Франція* France, etc.

Note.—*Марія*, о *Марії*; but *Мáрья*, о *Мáрьё*, Mary.

§ 29. ACCENTUATION OF SECOND DECLENSION.

The rules for the accentuation of this declension are comparatively easy.

Only oxytone nouns, i.e. those accented on the final syllable, can shift the accent. All others retain the accent on the same syllable.

Of oxytone nouns only those which are dissyllabic can shift the accent.

Amongst these [v. § 5 (5)] must be included liquid stems, such as *бородá* beard, *головá* head (contrast *главá* chapter).

Trisyllabic and polysyllabic nouns retain the same fixed accent.

For the *oxytone dissyllables* there are two sets of rules.

(a) The accent goes back on the root *only* in the nom. plur.

e.g. <i>вдовá</i>	widow	<i>вдовы</i>
<i>волнá</i>	wave	<i>волны</i>
<i>игrá</i>	game	<i>игры</i>
<i>рѣкá</i>	river	<i>рѣки</i>
<i>судý</i>	judge	<i>суды</i>
<i>слугá</i>	servant	<i>слуги</i>
<i>стрѣлá</i>	arrow	<i>стрѣлы</i>
<i>струнá</i>	string (e.g. of violin)	<i>струны</i>
<i>уздá</i>	reins	<i>узды</i>

and a few others.

(β) The accent goes back to the stem in the acc. sing. as well.

e.g. *рукá* hand *рúку, рúки*
(Occasionally, by analogy, *жёнамъ*, *жёнахъ* ;
сёстрамъ, *зёмлямъ*, *звёздамъ* are mistakenly used.)

<i>бородá</i>	beard	<i>бóроду, бóроды</i>
<i>водá</i>	water	<i>вóду, вóды</i>
<i>ногá</i>	foot	<i>нóгу, нóги</i>

§ 30. REMARKS ON THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The original nouns belonging to this class are few in number, but very common in use. Some of them have both Slavonic and Russian forms [v. § 5 (5)].

e.g. *вóльство* an administrative district, *власть* power.*

The derivative nouns in *-ость* are innumerable, and abstract nouns are mostly created with this termination. All such derivative nouns accent the root-syllable. [v. § 98, V.]

e.g. *старъ* old, *стáрость* old age.

(1) There is a special accented locative ending in *и*, used *only* after *на* and *въ* [cf. § 24 (1)].

e.g. *грудь* breast, *на груди*; *вѣтвь* twig, *на вѣтви*;
степь steppe, *въ степи*; *Русь* Russia (poetical, usual word *Россия*), *на Руси*.

(2) *Цéрковь* church, has in the dat., instr., and loc. plural *а* for *и*.

i.e. *церквамъ*, *-ами*, *-ахъ*

§ 31. ACCENTUATION OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The accentuation follows the paradigms in § 20; but some reservations must be made.

(1) Many of these nouns accent the termination on the *dative*, *instrumental*, and *locative plural*.

e.g. *должность* duty, *должностимъ*, *-ьми*, *-яхъ*

* Such feminines in *-ость* and *-чъ* correspond etymologically with the English forms "might," "draught," German "Wacht," etc.

(2) Amongst such nouns, the following have the accented locative singular [v. § 30].

бровь	brow	печь	oven	связь	connection
грудь	breast	речь	speech	часть	part
кость	bone	степь	steppe	площадь	
честь	honour	тень	shadow	public	square
ось	axle	цепь*	chain		

§ 32. THE "EUPHONIC" VOWELS *o*, *e*, *ë*.

In § 2 (7) and § 6 brief reference was made to the former vocalic values of ъ and ь, as short ö and ī, and to the aversion of the Russian language from heavy combinations of final consonants, especially when there are liquids (such as ы, р and ы) in the conglomeration.

Under these two heads simple phonetic changes, *which are written*, occur in *all* the declensions, and these rules must be applied to all of the declensions.

I. *Extrusion of ъ and ь when unaccented.* The ancient Russian for "day" was *дънъ*'. When ь became mute, being "open," the first vowel was transformed to *e*; hence the nominative *день*, genitive *дня*. Similarly *дно* bottom, gen. pl. *донъ* (for *дънъ*', *дънъ*).

This law may be tabulated:—

ъ, originally accented or in close syllables, becomes
о; unaccented disappears.

ь, originally accented or in close syllables, becomes
е or ё; unaccented disappears, or is retained
in spelling to soften the consonant.

* Not to be confused with цепь flail.

e.g. лобъ (formerly лъбъ') forehead, gen. лоба ;
 ротъ (formerly рътъ') mouth, gen. ртá ; левъ
 (formerly лъвъ') lion, gen. лъва* ; сотъ, gen.
 of сто (for съто), one hundred ; лёдъ ice
 (лъдъ'), gen. лъдá.*

Incidentally it may be stated here that the great complication in the accentuation of masculines arises from the loss of the final inflection of the nominative. Most Russian nouns retain the accent on the same syllable ; but where the original inflection was formerly accented and has become mute (i.e. either ъ or ь), the accent had to be thrown back.

In the feminines and neuters the original inflection a, o, has been retained ; hence the rules are much simpler.

Similar instances are : пёсъ dog, genitive пса ;
 мигъ, but мгновение, both meaning moment,
 the latter should have been spelt мъгновение ;
 мглá mist, for мыглá ; возъ, verbal prefix
 meaning "up," but взрастать to grow up (for
 възрастать) ; сонъ sleep, сна ; лёнъ linen, льна,
 etc.

As a contrast: Russian, мёдъ, мёда mead (the
 drink), Old Russian, медъ, мёда ; i.e. the
 original accent was on the stem.

Some other instances may illustrate the same point.
 All derivatives in ёцъ (formerly ёцъ') were once oxytone,
 i.e. accenting the termination ' ; hence, they "throw
 the accent forward" in the other inflections, and extrude
 the ё of the nominative which is merely epenthetic, a
 strengthening of the original ь (отъцъ).

* The ь is retained to indicate the soft sound.

So that the genitive of *отецъ* is *отцá*; so, too—

купéцъ	merchant	купцá
вéнéцъ	wreath	вéнцá

But, where the -ецъ is unaccented, the accent is stable and the form merely abbreviated in spelling, e.g. *Нéмецъ* German (for *Нéмьцъ*), *Нéмца*, etc.

Conversely in the genitive plurals in ь or ь, о, е, е must be restored.

e.g. яйцó	egg	яйцъ *
злó	evil	золь
кольцó	ring	кольецъ
письмо	letter	письмъ
окно	window	оконъ
стеклó	pane of glass	стёколъ
крéсло	armchair	крéсслъ
овцá	sheep	овéцъ
судбá	fate	судéбъ
рúчка	little hand	рúчекъ
копéйка	the coin	копéекъ

And observe that after a vowel the symbol ѹ replaces the symbol ь, but has the same value.

e.g. шéя neck, diminutive шéйка, шéекъ, i.e. ёйка, ёйкъ; соловéй nightingale, соловый, соловьéвъ; муравьéй ant, муравый, муравьёвъ.

In these last two instances єй represents an original ьї, which in Russian became єй. The original inflection would have been соловьїй, соловьї.

II. *Insertion of o and e for euphony.* Similarly, heavy final combinations of consonants are lightened in

* Irregular for яéцъ.

the nominative singular of masculines and genitive plurals of feminines and neuters; i.e. the terminations in **ъ** and **ь**.

Some instances have already been given; viz. **стеклó, крéсло, письмó.**

Others are:—

		<i>Gen. Plur.</i>
мáрка	a <i>mark</i> (German coin)	мáрокъ
иglá	needle	иglóль
иgrá	game	иgróръ
róзга	cane	róзогъ
сестrá	sister	сестёръ or сёстры
п'есня	song	п'есенъ
бáрышня	“ mademoiselle ”	бáрышень
сóтня	a body of one hundred	сóтень
кухня	kitchen	кухонъ or кухонь
землá	earth	земе́ль
реbró	rib	реbеръ
вéдрó	ewer	вéдеръ

In the nominatives:—

		<i>Gen.</i>
орёлъ (pronounce aryol)	eagle	орлá
огонь	fire	огнíй
вéтеръ	wind	вéтра
вíхорь	whirlwind	вíхря
наёмъ	hire	наймá
боéцъ	warrior	бойца
зáяцъ	hare	зáйца

Observe the vowel o or e is inserted according as the syllable is hard or soft.

Thus, too, **тъмá** darkness, **тёмный** dark, **тщáтельно** (for **тъщáтельно**) in vain, **тощíй** lean, and compare Russian **дочь**, **дóчери**, daughter, with the Church Slavonic **дщéри** (for **дъщéри**), cf. *θυγατέρες*.*

An apparent exception really confirms the rule, namely, that, when the effect of extruding the euphonic vowel would be to accumulate consonants, the vowel is retained.

e.g. **мертвéцъ** corpse **мертвецá**
близнéцъ twin **близнeca**

III. Nevertheless, some heavy combinations of final consonants are tolerated.

(1) In loan words.

e.g. **шрифтъ** type (from German) [v. § 11 (δ).]
министръ minister (from French)

(2) In the genitive plural of the abstract termination **-ство**.

e.g. **обществъ** from **общество** company
министерствъ from **министерство** ministry

(3) In a few words where resolution would not be easy.

e.g. **жéртва** sacrifice **жертвъ**

(4) In such words as **рубль** (masculine) rouble, **корабль** ship (masculine like **конь**), the **я** is mute. [v. § 4 (9).]

(5) In the formation of predicative adjectives no vowel is inserted before **p**.

e.g. **мудръ** wise, **быстръ** swift. [v. § 36 (4).]

* Whence **пáдчерица**, § 97.

IV. In the feminine in *и* of the third declension observe—

церковь	church	церкви, церковью
любовь	love	любви, любовью
вошь	louse	вши, вощью
ложь	lie	лжи, ложью
ржь	rye	ржи, ржью

But when *Любовь* is a girl's name it retains in "o" throughout; thus, *Любови, Любовью*.

THE ADJECTIVE.

§ 33. PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

(1) *The syntactical importance of the adjective in Russian.*

In English the adjectival function can be expressed in many really irregular ways; e.g. by a noun, "the village pump"; by combinations of adjectives and nouns, "the Civil Service Examination," even to the point of ambiguity, e.g. "the Women's Red Cross Slavery Abolition League"; also, vulgarly, by adverbs, "this 'ere bloke." In German, also, long compound nouns are yet more used to show the dependence.

Russian adjectives are fully declined in gender, number, and case.

In Russian, composition of words is rare and occasional, and fully declined adjectives must be used.

e.g. зубная боль tooth-ache
 правительственные указы government decrees
 баранья шерсть sheep's wool, etc.

Cf. in French, le ministère de l'intérieur, Home Office; les perquisitions militaires, war demands.

(2) In addition to this, Russian frequently prefers an adjective where other languages use other forms.

e.g. стеклянная бутылка a glass bottle, une bouteille de ver; St. Elias' day Ильинъ день; Igor's Army Игоревъ полкъ; the local custom тамошний или здѣшний обычай (from тамъ there, здѣсь here); a reindeer's horns олѣнныя рога.

Such adjectives are called *possessive*, e.g. Петровъ праздникъ St. Peter's holiday; Царычно село the Empress's village; or *descriptive*, e.g. божій храмъ God's Temple.

Ordinary adjectives when used with nouns are called *attributive*, e.g. добрый good, художественный artistic; i.e. those not attached to some particular noun, and not serving as a kind of inflected genitive.

(3) Except in the nominative (e masculine, я feminine and neuter) there is no distinction of gender in the plural adjective.

(4) Russian discards the copula "I am, he is," etc., and uses a special form as the *predicative* adjective; this form being the nominative, singular and plural, of the old simple form of the attributive adjective.

e.g. я Георгій	I am George
онъ столяръ	he is a carpenter
они миѣ знакомы	they are known to me

(5) The attributive adjective can in general have two forms as stated in the preceding section (4), one full, when agreeing with a noun, the other predicative; the latter only used and only surviving with a nomina-

tive form. (Certain predicative relations are expressed by a dative or instrumental, v. § 69, V. and VI.).

This apparent anomaly requires explanation. In older Russian, as in the Teutonic languages, there were two forms of *adjectival* declension, the *determinative* and the *simple*.

The simple form, as in most European languages, was inflected almost the same as the noun, an adjective being in a sense only a fuller form of noun capable of all three genders. Thus *Rōmānus* in Latin is exactly like *equus*, horse, *Rōmāna* like *mensa*, and *Rōmānum* like *bellum*; so, too, *ingens* has the same forms as *gens*, and so on. Similarly, in French the adjective *occidental* follows the form of the noun *cheval*, and *occidentale* of any feminine noun. In Latin there exists little but a grammarian's distinction between *bonus*, *bona*, good, masculine and feminine, and *filius*, *filia*, son, daughter.

So, too, in Russian the simple adjective originally followed nominal declensions almost exactly.

But, there being no article, the Old Slav pronoun *и*, he (obsolete in Russian), was compounded with and postponed to the simple form to make the so-called *determinative* form [v. § 35].

Thus as in German we find *guter Mann*, but *der gute Mann*, in older Russian, too, two forms existed. In modern Russian the *determinative form* has swept the simple form out of existence, except (α) in the nominative when used predicatively, (β) in the possessives and *descriptives*, some of which follow the simple inflection, (γ) in rather high-flown archaic style when the old simple forms are used.

(6) The accentuation of the determinative, possessive and descriptive forms, is constant; that of the simple form is very difficult, as difficult as the nominal forms which it follows. We have seen [§ 25] how the loss of the nominative suffix *ъ*, *ь* has confused the rules for accentuation, and [§§ 27 and 29] the slighter variances in the neuters and feminines. All these rules come in to complicate the formation of the predicative adjective.

(7) In modern Russian no instance survives of adjectives in the third declension.

(8) In the eighteenth century, when Lomonósov (1711–1765) created the modern Russian script out of the old Cyrillic, and set hard and fast rules for Russian, the grammarians introduced some unnecessary complications in the spelling of the determinative forms; e.g. *нóвый* new, *дíкий* wild, for *и́бвой*, *дíкой* (*нóвые* masc. pl., *нóвья* fem. and neut. pl.).

(9) The adjective may acquire a substantival meaning, but is still declined as an adjective.

e.g. <i>городо́й</i>	policeman
<i>портно́й</i>	tailor
<i>насъкóмое</i>	insect
<i>столóвая</i>	dining-room
<i>дéтская</i>	nursery

§ 34. THE SIMPLE, POSSESSIVE AND DESCRIPTIVE ADJECTIVES.

(1) For *reference* this is an example of the simple adjective. These forms are now disused save as stated in § 33 (5).

Dear

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	дóрого	дóрого	дорогá	дорогíй
Acc.	Like N. or G.	дóрого	дорогú	Like N. or G.
Gen.		дорогá	дорогíй	дорогíхъ
Dat.		дорогú	дорогъ	дорогíмъ
Instr.		дорогíмъ	дорогóю	дорогíми
Loc.		дорогóмъ	дорогъ	дорогíхъ

Good

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	дóбръ	дóбрó	дóбрá	дóбрý
Acc.	Like N. or G.	дóбрó	дóбру	Like N. or G.
Gen.		дóбрá	дóбрý	дóбрыхъ
Dat.		дóбрú	дóбръ	дóбрымъ
Instr.		дóбрýмъ	дóбровою	дóбрýми
Loc.		дóбромъ	дóбръ	дóбрыхъ

(2) *The formation of possessive adjectives and examples.*

Possessive adjectives are formed from names in the first and second declensions; those from the first end in *-овъ*, those from the second in *-ынъ*, *-инъ*.

The accentuation is *constant throughout all* the cases. Adjectives in *-овъ*, *-евъ* derived from monosyllables generally accent the termination: *Петрóвъ* Peter's, *Царéвъ* the Tsar's. Adjectives in *-овъ*, *-евъ* derived from other names, not monosyllables, retain the accent as in the name: e.g. *Алексéй*, *Алексéевъ*; *Алексáндръ*, *Алексáндроvъ*.

Adjectives in -инъ are similarly declined, and retain the accent of the name.

e.g. Сáша	(Alexander)	Сáшинъ
Никáти	Nikítá	Никáтинъ
Ильá	Elias	Ильáинъ
Трóица	Trinity	Трóицынъ
сестrá	sister	сестрíнъ
Царíца	Tsarítsa	Царíцынъ
дáдя	uncle	дáдинъ

Note.—Nouns in -ца take -цынъ; and мужъ husband, братъ brother, госпóдъ Lord, irregularly form мýжнинъ, братнинъ, госпóдень.

The two following examples illustrate the declensions:—

Peter's				
	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	Петróвъ	Петróво	Петróва	Петróвы
Acc.	Like N. or G.	Петróво	Петróву	Like N. or G.
Gen.	Петróва		Петróвой	Петróвыхъ
Dat.	Петróву		Петróвой	Петróвымъ
Instr.	Петróвымъ		Петróвою	Петróвыми
Loc.	Петróвомъ		Петróвой	Петróвыхъ

Lord's				
	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	госпóдень	госпóдне	госпóдня	госпóдни
Acc.	Like N. or G.	госпóдне	госпóднию	Like N. or G.
Gen.	госпóдня		госпóдней	госпóднихъ
Dat.	госпóдню		госпóдней	госпóднимъ
Instr.	госпóднимъ		госпóднею	госпóдними
Loc.	госпóднемъ		госпóдней	госпóднихъ

* Никáти.

Note that very many family names end in **-овъ** and **-инъ**, and are similarly declined, *except* that the locative singular masculine is **-ѣ**.

e.g. **въ Петróвомъ письмѣ** in Peter's letter, but
я говоры́лъ о Петróвѣ I was speaking of
 Petróv.

(3) *Formation of descriptive adjectives.*

Most of these adjectives are soft, being formed from nouns by adding **-ий** to the stem. The nominative singular is, masc. **-ий**, neut. **-ье**, fem. **-ья**; and the accent is *constant* and *always* that of the noun. The accusative singular feminine is also in **-ю**.

Otherwise their declension is like that of the soft determinatives. [v. § 35 (2).]

Observe that the rules in § 5 as to mutation of consonants must be applied in the formation of these adjectives.

e.g. **волкъ** wolf, **вóлчíй**, **вóлчье**, **вóлчы**
Бóгъ god, **бóжíй**, **бóжье**, **бóжы**
лиса fox, **лíсíй**, **лíсье**, **лíсъя**
дéвица or **дéвица** maiden, **дéвíчíй**, **дéвíчье**,
дéвíчы
пéсъ dog, **пéсíй**, **пéсье**, **пéсъя**, i.e. **пéсъя звéздá**
 the dog-star

Also **дéрево** wood, **деревы́нныи** wooden
кóжа leather, **кóжаный** of leather

This termination **-я́нныи** is hard, and is generally applied to words denoting materials.

§ 35. THE DETERMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

(1) *The scheme and the formation.*

This form of adjective is the most common in Russian, embracing all adjectives except the simpler declensions stated in § 34 (1) and (2).

The paradigms inserted *infra* are to illustrate the application of the rules in § 5 to these adjectives.

A short historical statement will explain away the apparent complications.

In Old Slavonic there was a 3rd person pronoun declined as follows:—

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	и	е	я	и	я	я
Acc.	и	е	ю	я	я	я
Gen.	егó	егó	ея	иҳъ	иҳъ	иҳъ
Dat.	емý	емý	ей	имъ	имъ	имъ
Instr.	имъ	имъ	ею	ими	ими	ими
Loc.	емъ	емъ	ей	иҳъ	иҳъ	иҳъ

By adding this vocalic pronoun on to the simple adjectival forms, like a postponed article, a *determinative* form was obtained, which in the older language had a slightly different meaning, such as is given in English by the use of the definite article.

In modern Russian the simple form is obsolete in the Nom., but a survey of the paradigm of the full adjective will show where the fusion has taken place, e.g. *молодъ*, *молодой*, i.e. *молодъи*, and so on.

Remember that in Russian the *r* of the genitive singular is sounded *v.* [v. § 5 (3) (3).]

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Hard Soft*	Hard Soft	Hard Soft	Hard Soft	Hard Soft	Hard Soft
N. ый <i>i</i> й ой accented	ое <i>ee</i>	ая <i>ja</i>	ые <i>ie</i>	ыя <i>iya</i>	ыя <i>iya</i>
A. As N or G Masc. and Neut.	ое <i>ee</i>	ую <i>ju</i> ю	N. or G.	Nom.	N. or G.
G. аро <i>ago</i> ого accented	ои <i>ej</i>	ои <i>ej</i>	All genders.		
D. ому <i>emu</i>	ои <i>ej</i>	ои <i>ej</i>	ымъ	имъ	
I. ымъ	имъ	оют <i>ej</i> ю	ыми	ими	
L. омъ	емъ	ои <i>ej</i>	ыхъ	ихъ	

The eighteenth century grammarians are responsible for two unnecessary complications.

(i) The invariable nom. sing. masc. hard should be *-ой*, as *ъ* when sounded in Russian becomes *о*. [v. § 32, I.]

But it was decreed that the spelling should be *-ой*, only when the termination was accented; otherwise *-ый*.

Consequently in guttural stems [v. § 5 (3)] this *-ый* had to be spelled *-ий*.

e.g. д^ибый new, д^ик^ий wild

But in such cases д^ик^ий and similar words are still sounded *d'ik'i*, as though spelt д^ик^{ой}; whereas д^ик^ие, where the *i* is there of right, is pronounced *d'ikiyē*.

* There are no soft adjectives accented on the termination except palatal stems (nominally hard).

† Commonly contracted, v. § 28 (2).

(ii) The only plural nominative form *should* be -e. The -я is purely orthographic, and in all cases the e and the я in -ыя, -ые, -ыя, -ые, -иа, -ие are sounded alike, viz. yě.
e.g. добрыя dóbryiě, худыя (худый bad) khudýiě

(iii) When the termination is accented, it is usual to write -óro and not -aro.
e.g. хráброго of the brave man (khrábróvə); but чужóго of the strange man (čužóvə).

TABLE OF ADJECTIVES.

Hard.		Full form.	Short form.
	Masc.	-ый мýлый	мýлъ gentle
	Neut.	-ое мýлос	мýло
	Fem.	-ая мýлая	мýла
Soft.	Masc.	-ий сýнiй	синъ blue
	Neut.	-ее сýнee	сине
	Fem.	-яя сýння	синя

(2) *Examples of the determinative adjective.*

Singular.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	бýлый	бýлое	бýлая
Acc.	N. or G. бýлое		бýлую
Gen.		бýлымо	бýлой
Dat.		бýлому	бýлой
Instr.		бýлымъ	бýломъ
Loc.		бýломъ	бýлой
Plural.			
Nom.	бýлые	бýлые	бýлыя
Acc.	N. or G. бýлые		N. or G.
Gen.		бýлыхъ	
Dat.		бýлымъ	
Instr.		бýлыми	
Loc.		бýлыхъ	
бýль, бýлá, бýло, бýлы white.			

<i>Singular.</i>				
	Masc.	Neut.		Fem.
Nom.	прямой	прямое		прямая
Acc.	N. or G.	прямое		прямую
Gen.		прямого		прямой
Dat.		прямому		прямой
Instr.		прямымъ		прямую
Loc.		прямомъ		прямой

<i>Plural.</i>				
	Masc.	Neut.		Fem.
Nom.	прямые	прямые		прямые
Acc.	N. or G.	прямые		N. or G.
Gen.		прямыхъ		
Dat.		прямымъ		
Instr.		прямыми		
Loc.		прямыхъ		

прямъ, прямá, прáмо, прáмы upright.

<i>Singular.</i>				
	Masc.	Neut.		Fem.
Nom.	синий	синее		синяя
Acc.	N. or G.	синее		синюю
Gen.		синяго		синей
Dat.		синему		синей
Instr.		синимъ		синяю
Loc.		синемъ		синей

<i>Plural.</i>				
	Masc.	Neut.		Fem.
Nom.	синие	синие		синия
Acc.	N. or G.	синие		N. or G.
Gen.		синихъ		
Dat.		синими		
Instr.		синими		
Loc.		синихъ		

синъ, синá, сине, сини blue

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	барáнii	барáнъe	барáнъя
Acc.	N. or G.	барáнъe	барáнъю
Gen.		барáнъяlo	барáнъeй
Dat.		барáнъемu	барáнъeй
Instr.		барáнъимb	барáнъeю
Loc.		барáнъемb	барáнъeй

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	барáнъи	барáнъи	барáнъи
Acc.	N. or G.	барáнъи	N. or G.
Gen.		барáнъихb	
Dat.		барáнъимb	
Instr.		барáнъими	
Loc.		барáнъихb	

барáнii, барáнъя, барáнъe, барáнъи of a ram [v. § 34 (3)].

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	вeлiкii	вeлiкoe	вeлiкaя
Acc.	N. or G.	вeлiкoe	вeлiкую
Gen.		вeлiкago	вeлiкoй
Dat.		вeлiкoму	вeлiкoй
Instr.		вeлiкимb	вeлiкoю
Loc.		вeлiкoнb	вeлiкoй

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	вeлiкiе	вeлiкiя	
Acc.	N. or G.	вeлiкiя	N. or G.
Gen.		вeлiкiхb	
Dat.		вeлiкимb	
Instr.		вeлiкими	
Loc.		вeлiкiхb	

вeлiкъ, вeлiкá, вeлiкó, вeлiкiй great.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	большо́й	большо́е	большáя
Acc.	N. or G.	большо́е	большúю
Gen.		большо́ю	большо́й
Dat.		большо́му	большо́й
Instr.		большо́мъ	большо́ю
Loc.		большо́мъ	большо́й

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	большíе	большíя	
Acc.	N. or G.	большíя	N. or G.
Gen.		большíхъ	
Dat.		большíмъ	
Instr.		большíми	
Loc.		большíхъ	

Not used predicatively. **большо́й**, big, large.
Thus: чужо́й, чужъ, чуже, чужá, чужи strange.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	свéжíй	свéжее	свéжая
Acc.	N. or G.	свéжее	свéжую
Gen.		свéжíа*	свéжей
Dat.		свéжíму	свéжей
Instr.		свéжíмъ	свéжею
Loc.		свéжíмъ	свéжей

<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	свéжíе	свéжíя	
Acc.	N. or G.	свéжíя	N. or G.
Gen.		свéжíхъ	
Dat.		свéжíмъ	
Instr.		свéжíми	
Loc.		свéжíхъ	

свéжъ, свéжá, свéжó, свéжí fresh. Thus: хоро́шíй, хоро́шъ, хоро́шó, хоро́шá, хоро́шí excellent.

* Sounded *svéživъ*.

§ 36. THE FORMATION OF THE PREDICATIVES.

Consult § 32 regarding the “insertion” of *o* and *e* to avoid an accumulation of final consonants.

(1) The following determinative adjectives have *no special* predicative form, and predicatively the full form must be used:—

- (a) All adjectives in *-скій*, e.g. *а́нглійскій* English, *францúзскій* French, *ру́сскій* Russian, *городскóй* municipal, etc.
- (B) *большо́й* big (physically): *-вели́къ* is used, e.g. *этотъ мужъ вели́къ* this man is tall; but *этотъ домъ большо́й*, this house is big.
- (γ) Adjectives denoting materials in *-янній*, e.g. *деревянній* wooden, *серебрянній* silver, etc., and the descriptive adjectives, such as *баранній* of a ram, v. § 34 (3).

(2) The following adjectives are *only* used in the predicative form: *радъ* glad, *гора́здъ* skilful.

e.g. *я очень радъ* I am very glad, *она́ на всё гора́зда* she is clever in everything.

(3) *Possessives* [v. § 34 (2)] are *only* declined with the simple forms.

Possessives in *-овъ* never shift their accent.

Possessives in *-инъ* are thus accented: *сéстри́нъ*, *сéстри́на*, *сéстри́но*, *сéстри́ны*, *as predicatives*.

(4) All other adjectives have both forms, and the predicative has to be deduced from the determinative.

In polysyllabic derivative adjectives there is generally no change of accent.

e.g. **мужественный** masculine, **мужественъ**, **мужественна**, **мужественно**

But in simpler original adjectives there is practically no rule but experience. A few instances may be given.

e.g. (i) **новый** new, **новъ**, **нова**, **ново**, **новы**

Thus, too, **бодръ** gay, **быстръ** swift, **великъ** big, **гордъ** proud, **твёрдъ** hard, **тихъ** still, **толстъ** fat, **старъ** old, **цѣлъ** whole, **чистъ** clean. [v. § 32, II.]

Thus, too:—

тёмный dark, **тёменъ**, **темна**, **темно**, **темны**

красный red, **красенъ**, **красна**, **красно**, **красны**

тёплый hot, **тёпель**, **тепла**, **теплоб**, **теплы**

чёрный black, **чёренъ**, **чerna**, **чerno**, **черны**

(ii) **голый** naked, **голъ**, **гола**, **голо**, **голы**

Thus, too, **высокъ** lofty, **далёкъ** far, **тяжёлъ** heavy, **бѣлый** white, **широкъ** far.

e.g. **далекій**, **далёкъ**, **далека**, **далеко**, **далёки**

(iii) **вольный** free, **воленъ**, **вольна**, **вольно**, **вольны**

Thus, too, **лёгкій** light (in weight), **лёгокъ**, **легка**, **легко**, **легкы**; **сильный** powerful, **умный** sensible.

(iv) **сухой** dry, **суха**, **сухо**, **сухы**

Thus, too, **босъ** barefooted, **глухъ** deaf, **гнилъ** foul, **доброгъ** dear, **живъ** alive, **молодъ** young, **нагъ** naked, **нѣмъ** dumb, **плохъ** poorly, **слѣпъ** blind, **хромъ** lame, etc.; **больной** sick, **боленъ**, **больна**, **больно**, **больны**; **честній** or **честны** honest, **честенъ**, **честна**, **честно**, **честны**.

§ 37. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—*Formation.*

(1) The Russian adjective has two degrees of comparison, comparative and superlative.

The comparative is in two forms: uninflected, e.g. *бóльшé радъ*, from *радъ* glad; inflected, e.g. *глúбóже* deeper, from *глúбокíй*.

The inflected comparative has a predicative and determinative form, e.g. *бóльшé*, *бóльшíйшíй* whiter.

It is formed from the positive in two ways—by adding *-щé*, *-щíйшíй* to the stem, the accent generally shifting to the termination; or by adding *-щé*, *-щíйшíй* to the stem, the accent remaining on the radical syllable.

-щé, *-щíйшíй*, has become the *regular* form.

When adding either termination, *-щé* or *-щíйшíй*, the rules for the mutation of consonants [v. § 5] must be strictly observed, and should be re-perused before the student proceeds any further with this section. In addition, he should remember [v. § 2 (3)] that in older Russian *щ* had a value approximating to *ш*, and therefore, just as *к*, *г*, *х* + *я* in modern Russian make *ча*, *жа*, *ша*, so, too, in the comparatives *к*, *г*, *х* + *-щé*, *-щíйшíй*, make *чайшíй*, *жайшíй*, *шайшíй*.

Similarly, *ск* or *ст* + *-щíйшíй* or *-щé* make *-ще*, *-щайшíй*, e.g. *чáстый* pure, *чáще*, *чищáйшíй*; *плóскíй* flat, *площáйшíй*.

(2) No inflections for the superlative exist.

The comparative form is used, or the positive with suitable pronouns or adverbs. So, too, “beautiful,” “content” in English have no inflected degrees of comparison.

In some cases, where the shorter comparative is used, the longer form is reserved as a superlative.

e.g. **высокий** high, **выше**, **высший**; superlative **высочайший**.

(3) The substitutes for the superlative are:—

(a) The prefixing of **наи-** to the positive or comparative.

e.g. **Вотъ наи-лучшій примеръ.**

This is the best example.

Это наи-меньшая сума.

This is the least sum.

(β) The prefixing of **самый**, self, to the positive or comparative.

e.g. **Это самая интересная книга изъ всѣхъ мнѣю прочитанныхъ.**

This is the most interesting book of those I have read.

Нашъ домъ самый красивый въ деревнѣ.

Our home is the prettiest in the village.

(γ) The addition of a form of **весь**, all, to the comparative, either **всегдѣ** or **всѣхъ**.

e.g. **Эта книга интереснѣе всѣхъ которыхъ я прочиталъ.**

This book is the most interesting of any I have read.

Вашъ советъ полезнѣе всѣхъ.

Your advice is the best.

(δ) The absolute superlative, as in English, is indicated by the positive with such words as *очень* very, etc.

e.g. Обедъ былъ очень вкусенъ.
The dinner was very tasty.

(ε) The superlative also can be formed by using—
въ высшей стѣпени in the highest degree.

e.g. Онъ въ высшей стѣпени великодушенъ.
He is most generous.

§ 38. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—*Rules.*

I. The uninflected form, i.e. with *болѣе* more, is used:—

(α) With adjectives like *радъ* glad.

(β) At discretion with lengthy adjectives, e.g. *болѣе глубокій* deeper.

(γ) When there is a comparison of two adjectives.

e.g. Рѣка Москвѣа болѣе широкѣа нѣжеи глубокѣа.
The river Moscow is broader than it is deep.

(δ) With adjectives (such as participles, derivative words, etc.), which it would be inconvenient to lengthen any more.

e.g. Никогдѣа не видѣала своего мѣжа болѣе оскорблѣнныиъ.
She had never seen her husband more grieved.

У него болѣе живоиъ умъ.

He has a keener mind.

(ε) Adjectives ending in *-скій*, *-скoй*.

II. Only four adjectives have a simple inflected superlative.

е.г. низкий	low	нижайший
высокий	high	высочайший
глубокий	deep	глубочайший
малый	small	малый
(better пай-мényше)		

III. Adjectives in -ый, -жий, -зы́й, -чий, and many in -кый, -тий, have no *declinable* comparative.

е.г. лы́сый	bald	лы́сые
свежий	fresh	свежие
горячий	warm	горячие

The reason probably is that where the regular form -е, -йши́й is used, the combination of sibilants would be too heavy, e.g. лы́шайши́й, свежайши́й, горячайши́й, and the want is supplied in other ways; *v. next subdivision.*

IV. The indeclinable comparative with the prefix по- can be used in concord with a noun.

е.г. Я купилъ шляпу побольше.	
	I have bought a larger hat.

When the object of comparison is stated, the prefix по- has a diminutive sense.

е.г. Ваша лошадь по-быстро́е Ивáновой.	
	Your horse is a little quicker than that of Iván.

V. There are two methods of translating "than":—

(1) The use of чѣмъ, or rarely нѣжели: when a phrase follows the comparison.

e.g. Этотъ урокъ лѣгче чѣмъ (нѣжели) мы думали.
This lesson is easier than we thought.

(2) When the object of comparison is a noun, the noun may be in the genitive.

e.g. Юрій умнѣе своего брата Кузьмы.
George is more sensible than his brother
Kužmá.

§ 39. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Examples.

I. The regular form of comparison is -ѣ, -ѣйшій, predicative indeclinable and declinable.

e.g. любѣзный amiable, любѣзнѣе, любѣзнѣйшій
-ѣ is often abbreviated to -ѣй.

When the positive cannot in *any* part of its declension throw the accent on to the ending, the original accentuation is retained.

e.g. справедлівый just, справедлівѣе, справедлівѣйшій

II. Another very common form is -ъе, -ъшій, the adjective retaining its original accent.

This is nearly always used when the positive drops a suffix, e.g. -ный, -кій, and the comparative termination is attached to the root.

With a very few adjectives the predicative neuter -ше, of the declinable form -ышій, is used alternatively with -е.

(a) Where the suffix of the positive is retained:—

е.g. крѣпкій	powerful	крѣпче	крѣпчайшій
лѣгкій	light (in weight)	лѣгче	лѣгчайшій
мѣлкій	small	мѣльче	мѣльчайшій
бойкій	brisk	бойчѣ (a modern form)	
лѣвкій	clever	лѣвчѣ	
г҃оркій	bitter	г҃орше	

(b) Where the suffix of the positive is dropped in the undeclined comparative, but generally retained in the determinative:—

е.g. высокій	high	выше	высшій*	высочайшій
глубокій	deep	глубже		глубочайшій
низкій	low	ниже	нижшій	нижайшій
поздній*	late	позже*		позднѣйшій
блїзкій	near	блїже		блїжайшій
узкій	narrow	уже		
рѣдкій	rare	рѣже		рѣдчайшій
сладкій	sweet	слѣще†		сладчайшій
крѣткій	gentle	[крѣче]‡		крѣтчайшій
короткій	short	короче		коротчайшій
тонкій	thin	тоньше		тончайшій
широкій	broad	шире		широкчайшій
далекій	far	далыше		далнѣйшій

* V. § 4 (7) and (9).

† A Church Slav mutation from тъ.

‡ More usually бѣте крѣткій.

(c) When the positive is not altered, there being no suffix:—

e.g. твёрдый	hard	твёрже	твёрдыйшій
богатый	rich	{ бога́че } богате́е }	богатыйшій
худоби	bad, lean	{ ху́же (bad) } худе́е (lean) }	худо́шій худьи́шій
плоский	flat	пло́ще	
тихий	quiet	ти́ше	тишайши́й
строгий	stern	стрóже	строжайши́й
дорогой	dear	дорóже	дражайши́й
молодой	young	моло́же	младши́й
старый	old	стáрше	стáрши́й
крутои	steep	кру́че	кругайши́й
дешёвый	cheap	дешёвле	
пустой	{ desolate empty	{ пúще пусте́е }	{ пущи́й пустайши́й }
чистый	clean	чи́ще	чистайши́й

It will be observed that in modern Russian the mutations mostly only occur in the uninflected form of the comparative.

Note, too—

дóлгий long, дóльше (irregular, due to analogy of бóльше)
далёкий far, дáльше *or* дáлче, дальни́йшій (from дáльний)
рано (adverb) early, рáньше *or* рáнче

With these few exceptions the comparison of the adjective is regular; and all derivative adjectives, e.g. знаменитый famous, proceed in accordance with the rule, знаменитéе, знаменитыйшій.

So, too, сердитый angry.

The inflected comparative of such words is rarely used; the superlative replaced, as stated in § 37 (3).

III. The following adjectives have no positive:—

e.g. **лúчше**, **лúчшíй** better; **мénše** less; **мénьше**, **мénьшíй** smaller; **бóльше** more; **бóльше**, **бóльшíй** bigger.

Observe the distinction:—

меньшóй	junior	большóй	big
мénьшíй	smaller	бóльшíй	bigger

Хорошíй and дóбрый are used as positives for лúчше; but добрéе, добрéйшíй also exist; also мáлый as a positive for мénše; and велиkíй and большóй for бóльше, бóльше.

THE PRONOUN.

§ 40 (1). PRELIMINARY REMARKS ON THE PRONOUNS.

The pronouns in Russian present very little difficulty.

Observe (1) in the pronouns the genitive in -ro is written -oro, -ero, and pronounced and accented *avó*, *evó*. The dative in -my is also oxytone.

(2) Pronominal adjectives (such as **котóрый**, **такóй**) are declined exactly like ordinary adjectives [v. § 35 (2)].

(3) It will be observed that pronouns, though they are hard stems, take a *soft* plural, e.g. **самъ** self, **сáми**.

The reason of this is that in Old Russian the nominative and accusative plural masculine were **и** and **ы**. In Russian the old feminine plural forms in **ы** have superseded the masculine; but the same survival of the old nominative is found in the old participles in **-ль**, now used as the past tense, e.g. **быть**, **были**.

§ 40 (2). TABLE OF RUSSIAN PRONOUNS AND ADVERBS.

Interrogative	Who ?	что what?	кто who?	как ? whose ?	чей whose ?	как ? how ?	где where ?	куда whither ? whence ?	когда when ?	почему ? why ?	сколько how much ?
Relative	кто	что	кто *	чей	какъ икъ *	какъ	где	куда	когда	почему	сколько
Demonstrative (remote)	тотъ	то	свой† его ей§ ихъ	такъ	такъ	такъ	туда	оттуда	тогда	потому	столько
Demonstrative (near)	этотъ	это									
Demonstrative (remote)	онъ	оно									
Demonstrative (near)	сей	сё									
Universals	всѣлый всѣ всѣ всѣ	всѣ всѣ всѣ									всѣ ¹⁶ always

Personal							
1st per. sing.	я	ты	ты	ты	ты	ты	ты
2nd "	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
3rd "	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
1st " plur.	они́онбо						
2nd " "	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
3rd " "	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
Reflexive	себя †						
Indefinite							
Negative							
Identity							
Differences							

* Obsolete.

† Or with **any** suitable preposition. e.g. **PRIVÉ**.

† Reflexive for *all* persons. § Genitives, cf. Latin *eius*.

† Or with *any* suitable preposition, e.g. *ПРИЁМ*.

† Reflexive for *all* persons. § Genitives, cf. Latin *eius*.

† Or with *any* suitable preposition, e.g. *ПРИЁМ*.

§ 41. EXAMPLES OF THE PRONOUNS.

I. *The Interrogative* (singular and plural).

N. V.	кто (khtó) for persons	что (štó) for things
Acc.	кого́ (kavó)	что
Gen.	кого́	чего́ (čivó)
Dat.	кому́	чему́
Instr.	кемъ	чёмъ
Loc.	комъ	чёмъ

котóрый (which of several ?) and какóй (of what sort ?) are declined adjectivally.

кóй which ?

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	кóй	кóе	кóя	кóи
Acc.	N. or G.	кóе	кóю	N. or G.
Gen.	кóего*	кóей	кóей	кóихъ
Dat.	кóему	кóей	кóею	кóимъ
Instr.	кóимъ	кóею	кóей	кóими
Loc.	кóемъ	кóей	кóей	кóихъ

чéй whose ?

	Singular.			Plural.
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	чéй	чье	чья	чые
Acc.	N. or G.	чье	чью	N. or G.
Gen.	чье́го (čivó)	чье́й	чье́й	чье́хъ
Dat.	чье́му	чье́й	чье́ю	чье́мъ
Instr.	чье́мъ	чье́ю	чье́й	чье́ими
Loc.	чье́мъ	чье́й	чье́й	чье́хъ

* Sounded kóyivə.

Remarks.—(1) *кой* is practically disused except in poetry, and a few proverbs.

(2) *сколько* is the only other declinable interrogative form.

Nom. Voc.	<i>сколько</i>
Gen. Loc.	<i>сколькихъ</i>
Dat.	<i>сколькимъ</i>
Instr.	<i>сколькими</i>

столько is similarly declined.

Observe.—In the nominative and accusative *сколько* is a noun governing the genitive plural; in other cases an adjective.

e.g. *Сколько книгъ вы нашли?*

How many books have you found?

Я самъ не знаю сколькими странами я владѣю.

I do not myself know of how many countries

I am the master.

II. *Relatives.*

These forms are now identical with the interrogatives. But, except in proverbs and poetry, *кто* and *что* are disused, *который* replacing them as relatives.

кто and *что* are scarcely ever used in strict apposition.

e.g. *Я встрѣтилъ Ивáна которому я обѣщалъ мою лошадь.*

I met John to whom I had promised my horse.

But they are commonly employed in distributive phrases *where the relative precedes.*

e.g. **Кто бы ни появился у окна, въ тогó немедленно стрѣлили.**

Whoever appeared at a window, (at him) they instantly shot.

Что бы вы ни дѣлали, вы этими гою не поможете.

Whatever you do, you will not remedy the sorrow thereby.

III. *Demonstratives.*

тотъ that

Sing.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Plural. All genders.
Nom.	тотъ	то	та	тѣ
Acc.	N. or G.	то	ту	N. or G.
Gen.	тогó*	той		тѣхъ
Dat.	тому	той		тѣмъ
Instr.	тѣмъ	тю		тѣми
Loc.	томъ	той		тѣхъ

этотъ this

Sing.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Plural. All genders.
Nom.	этотъ	это	эта	эти
Acc.	N. or G.	это	эту	N. or G.
Gen.	этого	этой		этыхъ
Dat.	этому	этой		этимъ
Instr.	этимъ	этю		этими
Loc.	этомъ	этой		этыхъ

бный that

Sing.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Plural.
Nom.				бные, бныя
Acc.	Like any hard adjective			бныхъ
Gen.		in -ый		бныхъ
Dat.				бнымъ
Instr.				бными
Loc.				бныхъ

* Sounded tavó.

сей this

Singular.

	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Plural.
Nom.	сей	циé сé	циá	All genders.
Acc.	N. or G.	циé сé	циó	циí
Gen.	ceró*		сей	сихъ
Dat.	семý		сей	сими
Instr.	симъ		сéю	сими
Loc.	сёмъ		сей	сихъ

Consult § 2 (3).

All the rest of the declinable pronouns on the demonstrative lines in the table follow the regular forms of the determinative adjectives without variation. e.g. **тако́й**, **таково́й** such as that; **этаки́й** such as this, etc.

Remarks.—Practically only **тотъ** and **этотъ** are used in modern Russian. **оный** is found in legal documents, and **сей** in set phrases; e.g. **сего́дня** (*sivód'nya*) to-day, **сейча́сь** in a minute, **до сихъ порь** up to the present, **сю ми́нуту** this very minute.

IV. Universal Pronouns.

всéйкíй of all sorts, and **кáждый** each, are declined like the determinative adjectives.

весь, all, drops the vowel “e” [v. § 32, I].

Singular.

	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Plural.
Nom.	весь	всё	вся	All genders.
Acc.	N. or G.	всё	всю	всí
Gen.	всего́†		всей	всéхъ
Dat.	всемý		всей	всéмъ
Instr.	всёмъ		всéю	всёми
Loc.	всёмъ		всей	всéхъ

* Sounded *sivó*.† Sounded *fiivó*.

V. Personal Pronouns and Possessives.

Singular.

	1st pers.	2nd pers.	3rd pers.		Reflexive.
			Masc.	Neut.	Fem.
Nom.	я	ты	онъ	онó	она
Acc.	меня	тебя	его*	её	себя
Gen.	меня	тебя	его	еи †	себя
Dat.	мнѣ	тебѣ	ему	ей	себѣ
Instr.	мнѣю	тобою	имъ	ею	собою
	мнои	тобои			собои
Loc.	мнѣ	тебѣ	ёмъ	ей	себѣ

Plural.

Nom.	мы	вы	они	онѣ‡	As
A.G.L.	нась	вась		ихъ	
Dat.	намъ	вамъ		имъ	singular.
Instr.	нами	вами		ими	

The close similarity of some of these forms with the Latin pronouns will strike the student, e.g. *tibi* тебѣ, *sibi* себѣ.

Refer back to § 2 (3) and § 35 (1).

The possessives мой, твой, свой are declined like *кои* [v. § 41, I.], but accent the last syllable of the terminations uniformly; e.g. моё, мой, моей, моего, моему, мой, etc.

нашъ our, and вашъ your, are declined alike, viz. :

	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	Plural.
Nom.	нашъ	наше	наша	наши
Acc.	N. or G.	нашѣ	нашу	N. or G.
Gen.	нашего		нашѣй	нашихъ
Dat.	нашему		нашѣй	нашими
Instr.	нашими		нашѣю	нашими
Loc.	нашемъ		нашѣй	нашихъ

* Sounded *yivó*, *yim*, etc. † Commonly sounded like acc. *ee*.

‡ Sounded like *omъ*.

Remarks.—(1) *свой* and *себя* always refer back to the subject, *whatever the person*.

e.g. Вы продали свою честь.
You have sold your honour.

The 3rd person pronouns when they are *not* reflexive are the genitives *егó, ей, ихъ*.

e.g. Мы сказали что купецъ уже прода́лъ егó товáры.
They told me that the merchant has already sold his (somebody else's) goods.

In vulgar speech *ихний* is used for *ихъ* their.

When *себя* is attached to reflexive or passive verbs it takes the shortened form *ся* (*sounded ca*) after consonants, *сь* after vowels.

In older Russian all the pronouns had abbreviated enclitic forms [cf. French "moi," "me," etc.], viz. *ми, ти, ся* for *меня, тебя, себя*; *ни, ти, си* for *ниятъ, тебѣ, себѣ*. Of these forms only *ся* survives.

e.g. Въ отчаяніи пльнникъ закололъ себя.
In despair the prisoner stabbed himself (reflexive).

Стыжусь этого.
I am ashamed of this (a reflexive verb).

Чашка разбилась.
The cup was smashed (a passive).

(2) When *егó, емý, ей, её, ихъ, имъ, имп, ей, ею, ёмъ* are governed by *any* preposition, the letter *и* is prefixed to them.

e.g. къ нему to him (sound *knemú*)
въней in her (sound *vnéi*)
противъ нихъ against them

у него with him [*chez lui*]
 съ ними with them (sound *sníimi*)
 близь неё near her
 на него against him (sound *nanívó*)
 на немъ on it (sound *nanyóm*)

But его ради for his sake (the preposition follows)
 около его дома near his house
 подъ ихъ властью under their power, etc.

In these two instances его and ихъ are possessive pronouns, not governed by the preposition.

(3) As in the nouns and adjectives, the instrumental singular feminine -ою, -ею, is often shortened to -ой, -ей.

(4) As the verbs mostly have full personal inflections, the pronouns are not added except for emphasis.

e.g. клянемъ we swear
 слышу I hear
 понимаёшь ? do you understand ?

VI. *The Indefinite Pronouns.*

These are formed, as will be seen in the table in various ways, by prefixes and suffixes; cf. English who, whoever, whoso, whosoever.

(1) Prefixing *нѣ-* accented.

(2) Adding *нибудь* (i.e. as it may be, from *будь*, imperative of *быть*). [v. § 57, II. and § 82, III.]

(3) Prefixing *кое-* with a *distributive* sense.

e.g. где-ни-будь somewhere or other
 кое-гдѣ here and there
 кое-кто various people (say)
But нѣкоторые some people (say)

(4) Adding *-то*. This suffix may be used with nouns as well, and gives an ironic or vague sense.

e.g. *человѣкъ-то* that kind of man
какой-то some sort or other
кто-то somebody you know who

VII. *The Negative Pronouns.*

These are formed by prefixing *ни-* *nor*.

When declined with prepositions the compound breaks up, and the preposition precedes the pronoun immediately.

e.g. *ни на кого* against no one
ни на какомъ мѣстѣ not on any place

In Russian a negative pronoun requires a negative verb, and, contrary to modern English practice, a double negative affirms the negative, and does not destroy it.

e.g. *Никогда не было войны похѣжей на тепѣрешнюю.*
Never was there a war like the present war.

Я никогда не видѣлъ вѣшего брата.
I could not see your brother anywhere.

But consult § 85.

VIII. *The Pronouns of Identity.*

(1) By affixing *-же* to any demonstrative, identity is implied.

e.g. *этотъ-же* the same as this
таковѣй-же the same sort as that

(2) The words *самъ* and *самыи*.

Самъ means "self"; as in English, I myself я *самъ*.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.	All genders.
Nom.	самъ	само	сама	самы
Acc.	самого	само	самы†	N. or G.
Gen.		самого*	самой	самыхъ
Dat.		самому	самой	самымъ
Instr.		самымъ	самою	самыми
Loc.	самомъ		самой	самыхъ

As regards the soft plural *сами*, cf. § 40 (1) (3). It has been carried all through.

Самый means “the same,” and is declined like a regular determinative adjective.

For its use to form the superlative, v. § 37 (3).

IX. *The Pronouns of Difference.*

The meanings of *другой* and *иной* should be marked. *другой* is “other,” Latin *alius*, Greek *ἄλλος*, i.e. anything indeterminate, not what is being thought of. *иной* is “some other,” Latin *ceteri*, Greek *ἕτεροι*, a more or less determinate object.

e.g. Нѣкоторые этого не могутъ понять.

Some cannot grasp this (fact).

Иные могутъ подумать что онъ сошель съ ума.

Some (*quidam*, certain people) may think he has gone mad.

Одній, однѣ [v. § 2 (3)], the plural of *одинъ* one, also means “some”; cf. English, the one says, the other . . .

So, too, *иогда* sometimes, from time to time (definite)
нѣкогда sometimes (uncertain)

когда-то at some time or other (indeterminate)

прочіе, прочія means “the rest,” “the remainder.”

In the singular it occurs in the phrase:—

въ прочемъ for the rest (of the argument, etc.).

* Sounded *самою*. † Or *самою*.

§ 42 (1). A TABLE OF RUSSIAN VERBS.

I. *Conjugations.*

Infin. in -*тъ*, -*атъ*, -*итъ*
Pres. -*и*, -*еимъ* ... -*ятъ*

Guttural roots, infin. in - <i>ыб</i>	Nasal roots, infin. in - <i>ытъ</i>	Sibilant roots, infin. in - <i>оръ</i>	Liquid roots, infin. in - <i>оръ</i>	Dental roots, infin. in - <i>оръ</i>	Consonantal roots with suffixal "a" in infin. and past tense
" Instantaneous" verbs transitive, "и" in past tense past part. pass. in - <i>т</i>					

III.

Infin. in -*тъ*, -*атъ*, -*итъ*
Pres. -*и*, -*еимъ* ... -*ятъ*

ORIGINAL	DETERMINATIVE		ANOMALOUS		
			No suffix before termination	from nouns in - <i>аръ</i> , - <i>итъ</i>	Inceptives in - <i>тъбъ</i>
<i>Liquid</i> roots - <i>оръ</i> , - <i>атъ</i>	Vocalic roots			Derivatives in - <i>тъвъ</i> , - <i>тъвътъ</i>	Iteratives in - <i>тъвъ</i> , - <i>тъвътъ</i>
<i>a</i> <i>и</i> <i>ы</i> <i>и</i> <i>у</i>				Suffixal infin. in - <i>аръ</i> , - <i>итъ</i>	Iteratives in - <i>тъвъ</i> , - <i>тъвътъ</i>
Originals in - <i>тъвъ</i> , - <i>тъвътъ</i>					
Verbal noun and past part. pass. in - <i>т</i>					
Derivatives in - <i>тъвъ</i> , - <i>тъвътъ</i>					
in - <i>аръ</i> , - <i>тъвъ</i> , - <i>тъвътъ</i> , and others					
- <i>аръ</i>					

THE VERB.

§ 42 (2). PRELIMINARY OBSERVATIONS.

The Parts of the Russian Verb.

(i) The Russian verb presents little difficulty in comparison with many other modern languages. As was remarked in § 10, the forms of conjugation are very much reduced. They are:—

- (1) The infinitive.
- (2) A fully conjugated present tense, used in perfective verbs as the future.
- (3) A past tense consisting of an old participle in **-лъ**, with the personal pronouns, the copula, as usual in Russian, being omitted.
- (4) An imperative formed directly from the present tense.
- (5) A present “gerundive”* active in **-я**, and present participle in **-ущий** or **-ящий**.
- (6) A past participle active in **-вший**, and a past gerundive* in **-въ** or **-вшъ**.

These last-named forms are comparable with the predicatives and determinatives of the comparative, and originate in the same way. In older Russian **ши** was a feminine suffix of certain adjectives.

- (7) A present participle passive in **-емый**, and
- (8) A past participle passive in **-тый** or **-ный**.

The participles are all fully declined like ordinary adjectives.

- (9) A verbal noun in **-ние**.

The functions of these parts are more fully discussed in the Syntax, § 88 and 89.

* This so-called “gerundive” is merely an indeclinable participle, only used in agreement with the subject of the sentence.

The Deficiencies and the “Aspects” (виды).

(ii) Thus in Russian there is *no* conjunctive, only one conjugated tense, only one so-called past “tense” to express imperfects, preterites, perfects, pluperfects, etc. The future imperfective is formed by a compound tense, the infinitive with *бýдь*, one of the forms of *быть* to be.

The obvious deficiencies are supplemented by the *aspects* of the Russian verb.

This subject cannot at present be approached; it may be briefly explained. [v. §§ 58 and 92.]

In English, “I do,” “I am doing,” “I was doing,” “I did,” “I used to do,” “I *do* do,” “I have done,” all define the nature of the act; e.g. “I am doing” is the continuous conjugation; “I used to do” the habitual; “I have done” marks the completion or perfective aspect, and so on.

If the reader knows any Latin, and can imagine Latin reduced to one tense, but converting the other tenses into separate conjugations with new infinitives to match, he will understand what has happened in Russian. Old Russian had a far fuller complement of tenses, *imperfect*, *aorist*, *perfect*, etc. In modern Russian “aspects” replace the tenses and fulfil entirely the same object.

If Latin had evolved an infinitive *labōrābāre*, from the imperfect *labōrābam*, to express the habitual aspect, or *labōrāvīre* (from *labōrāvī*) to express the completion or perfective, such separate by-forms of the verb would very nearly correspond with the Russian aspects. Such desideratives as *ēsūrīre*, from *ēsūrus*, future participle of

ēdō to eat, and the inceptives in *-esco*, might indeed in the parlance of Slavonic grammar be termed "aspects."

To those who know a little Greek, the aspects will be even more familiar.

Thus the present forms *νοσεῖν* to be ill, *ἀποθνήσκω* to die, correspond to the imperfective *болѣть* or *хворать* and *умирать*; the aorist forms *ἐνόσησα*, *νοσῆσαι*, *ἀποθανεῖν*, to the perfective *оболѣть*, *захворать*, *умереть*, to be taken ill, to die. E.g. *онъ оболѣмъ*, *захворалъ*, *ἐνόσησε*; but *онъ болѣмъ*, he was ill some time, *ἐνόσει*; *онъ умиралъ*, he lay a-dying, *ἀπέθνησκε*.

And just as *νοσήσω*, etc., is a future, not a present, but has the aorist stem, so *захвораю*, *умру* signify I shall fall ill, etc. E.g. *умрѣть отъ чахотки* he will die of consumption.

How the Parts are Formed.

(iii) To know every form of the Russian verb, it is only necessary to learn the infinitive and 3rd person singular present. The rest follow.

Verbs Original and Derivative.

(iv) Verbs may be either original—i.e. unpreferable to any simpler form—or derivative, from nouns or other verbs. E.g. in English "to fall," "to write," are original; "to book," "to tabulate" derivative (from the noun "book," and the Latin *tābula*, table). Or as in Latin, *dicere* to say, *iudicāre*, from *iūdex*, a judge.

Derivatives, verbs which mostly represent complex ideas, greatly outnumber the primary verbs ; in frequency of use they are less, as the simpler relations have to be constantly re-stated.

In Latin derivative verbs have a vocalic stem, e.g. *iūdicā-re*, *monē-re*, *audīre*.* So, too, in Russian *дума* thought, *думать* to think; *зелёный* green, *зеленеть* to become green; *живъ* alive, *жить* to live ("original"), *оживить* to revive, from *живой* alive.

The derivative verbs being the more numerous, and the newest and easiest formations, tend to set the model, and become the "regular" verbs.

The primary verbs, being the most employed and the most worn down in daily use, also being drawn from more ancient sources, conserve obsolete forms, and are sometimes called "irregular"—arbitrarily and inaccurately. Actually Russian has next to no verbs that can be really termed anomalous.

Further, many "original" or "primary" verbs have consonantal stems or roots, e.g. Latin *reg-ere* to rule, *dic-ere* to say.

§ 43. THE RUSSIAN INFINITIVE.

The Russian infinitive ends in **-ть** and is preceded by the root in original verbs, by the stem in derivative verbs.

In some verbs **-ть** accented survived, e.g. **нес-ть** to carry.

* Russian verbs in **-ти**, **-ти**, **-ать**, **-аю**, **-ить**, **-ю** may be compared with the Latin *-eo*, *-[a]o*, *-io*, whilst the Russian first conjugation consists of root-verbs, like the Latin third.

In some few guttural stems, the guttural and -ть coalesce into -чъ, e.g. печь to bake, for **пек-ть**; жечь to burn, for **жег-ть**.

In some dental roots, the dental and -ть coalesce into -сть, e.g. вестí to lead, for **вед-ть**; **плести** to pleat, for **плет-ть**.

In "original" vocalic stems -ть follows the root, e.g. **зна-ть** to know.

Sometimes a consonant is extruded, e.g. **жить** to live, for **жив-ть**.

All derivative stems are vocalic, e.g. **желá-ть** to wish.

§ 44. THE FORMS DERIVED FROM THE RUSSIAN INFINITIVE.

The -ть termination must be removed, and the stem or root stripped.

- (1) By adding -ніе a verbal noun is formed; e.g. **колебáть** to rock, **колебáніе**; **въять** to blow, **въяніе**.
- (2) By adding -лъ the past tense is formed; e.g. **я колебáлъ** I rocked.*
- (3) By adding -я to the present stem the present "gerundive" **дѣла-ть**; e.g. **дѣлая** doing.

* In consonantal stems this -лъ is dropped in the masculine singular, restored in the other inflections.

E.g. **тереть** (root **тер**) to rule, past tense **тѣръ**, **тѣрма** (fem.), etc.

лечь (root **лєр**) to lie down, past tense **лѣгъ**, **лѣгма** (fem.), etc.

-речь (root **рек**) to speak, past tense **рѣгъ**, **реклá** (fem.), etc.

But cf. for this last the Polish **rzekł**, and **Čech řekl**.

- (4) By adding **-ущій**, **-ющій** to the present stem the present participle; e.g. **им'ющій** possessing (**им'є-ть**);* **-ящій** is added with *derivative* verbs in **-ить**: **пис-а-ть**, **пишущій**.
- (5) By adding **-въ** or **-ви** to the past gerundive; e.g. **пис-а-ть** to write, **писавъ**, **писавши**,† and by adding **-вшій** the past participle active; e.g. **весел-и-ть** to enliven, **весел-и-вшій**.
- (6) By adding **-емый** or **-имый** the present participle passive; e.g. **куп-и-ть** to buy, **купимый**; **зна-ть** to know, **знаемый**.

An easier rule is to form this from the 1st person plural present **купімъ**, **знаемъ**.

- (7) A perfect participle passive in **т** or **п.** **т** is only used in a very few verbs of certain types; e.g. **двинуть** to move, **двинутый**, **послать** to send, **посланный** sent.

This participle is accented like the 2nd person singular present of variable verbs.

All participles are fully declined as predicatives and determinatives.

Before proceeding to learn the verbs, the student must be sure he knows the phonetic rules in §§ 2, 5, 6, 8, 9.

It will be observed that all the forms derived from the infinitive are accented like the infinitive. There are scarcely any exceptions to this rule.

* In older Russian the terminations were **-учи**, **-учи** gerundive, **-учи**, **-учи** participle. Some of the latter survive as adjectives, e.g. **могучий** powerful (**мочь**), **горячий** (**гореть**) hot, **сидячий** sedentary. **будучи** is still used as the gerundive present of **быть**; **будущий**, the regular form, means "future."

† In consonantal roots the termination is **-шій**, e.g. **несті** to carry, **несті**, **нёшій**.

§ 45. THE FORMATIONS FROM THE 1ST PERSON
SINGULAR PRESENT.

The *imperative* is formed from the 1st person singular present by substituting *й*, *ь* or *и* for *у* or *ю*.

The addition of *-те* makes this imperative form plural.

The same *-те* added to the 1st person plural makes a *hortative* mood "let us do."

The accentuation is that of the present tense.

e.g. *бúду* I shall be, *бúдь*, *бúдьте*, *бúдем-те*
веселю I enliven, *веселí*, *веселíте*

There are a very few exceptions to this general rule, viz. *бить* to beat [v. § 52 (2) β], *дать* to give [v. § 57, III.], *стоять* to stand [v. § 52 (3)], *боится* to fear [v. § 52 (3)], *смѣяться* to laugh [v. § 52 (3)], *крыть** to cover [v. § 52 (2) ϵ].

e.g. *внéмлю* I take, *внemлí* *бью* I beat, *бей*
бою I fear, *бой-ся* *мóюсь* I wash, *мой-ся*

§ 46. THE ACCENTUATION OF THE VERB.

I. All the forms derived from the infinitive [v. § 44] have a fixed accent, that of the infinitive.

II. Except in a very few verbs the imperative has the accent of the 1st person singular present.

III. Verbs which uniformly accent the termination or the stem in every part are said to have a fixed

* The exception in verbs in *-ыть* is apparent only: if the *ы* be taken as a contraction of *-оé* or *у*, i.e. as equivalent to *-мóеть*.

accent. Only a few derivatives and most of the original verbs have a variable accent.

IV. The only constant variations in the accentuation of the verb are in the present tense and the past participle passive, and forms derived from the present stem.

V. Every verb which has an infinitive of two syllables or more, and is not accented on the ultimate, has a fixed accent.

VI. In dissyllabic verbs accented on the ultimate in the infinitive, the accent *may* vary on certain inflections.

VII. A verb with a variable accent accents the infinitive and 1st person singular present alike, the 2nd and 3rd persons singular, the 1st and 2nd plural, on the penultimate; the 3rd person plural either on the ultimate or penultimate, generally the latter.

VIII. As a rule, the past participle passive has the secondary accent when the accent is variable.*

IX. Russian verbs, original or derivative, with fixed or variable accents, are divided into four conjugations, which differ only very superficially and slightly.

e.g. *видѣть* to see (rule V.).

вижу	видимъ
видиши	видите
видить	видять

пишать to write (rule VI.).

пишу	пишемъ
пишешь	пишете
пишетъ	пишутъ

* E.g. воспита́ть educate, воспита́нны́й; пишáть write, пíшетъ, пíшсаный.

сказа́ть to tell (rule VI.).

сказу́	сказа́мъ
сказа́шь	сказа́тє
сказа́ть	сказа́тъ

нести́ to carry (invariable) (rule VI.).

несу́	неса́мъ
несёшь	несёте [v. § 9 (7) (1)]
несёть	несутъ

§ 47. EXAMPLES OF THE COMPLETE CONJUGATION OF TWO DERIVATIVE VERBS WITH FIXED ACCENTS.

<i>Infinitive</i> :	жела́ть to wish	въри́ть to believe
<i>Verbal noun</i> :	жела́ние	[въреніе]*
<i>Present gerundive</i> :	жела́я	въря
<i>Present part. act.</i> :	жела́ющій	върящій
<i>Past gerundive act.</i> :	жела́въ, жела́вши	въривъ, въривши
<i>Past part. act.</i> :	жела́вшій	върившій
<i>Present part. pass.</i> :	жела́емый	въримый†
<i>Past part. pass.</i> :	жела́нныи	-въренныи
<i>Present</i> :	я жела́ю	върю
	ты жела́ешь	въришь
	онъ, она́, онó жела́еть	върить
	мы жела́емъ	въримъ
	вы жела́ете	върите
	они́, они́, онó жела́ютъ	върятъ
<i>Past</i> :	я, ты жела́ль, жела́ла	въриль, върила
	онъ, она́, онó жела́ль, жела́ла, жела́ло	
	они́, они́, онó въриль, върила, върило	
	мы, вы, они́, они́, онó жела́ли, върили	

* Replaced by върованіе, from въровать.

† Rare.

<i>Future</i> :	бúду	желáть	бúдемъ	желáть
	бúдешь		бúдете	
	бúдетъ		бúдуть	

<i>Imperative</i> :	2nd pers. sing.	желáй	вéрь
	2nd pers. pl.	желáйте	вéрьте

Unless specially mentioned, all the parts of the Russian verb are simply and regularly formed as in these two paradigms.

§ 48. THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

Some Phonetic Rules.

Before entering on this section, reperuse § 5, § 6, § 8, § 9.

Remember.—Words in -е-е-, -о-о-, -е-е-, -о-о-, though now dissyllables, represent monosyllabic roots in -е-, -ра-, -а-, -а-.

Remember—

г + е makes же г + и makes жи г + ю makes жу
And similarly with к and х (changing to ч and ш).

Remember—

т + ю makes in Russian чу, in Church Slavonic ѿ.

д + ю makes in Russian жу, in Church Slavonic жду.

т + я can make in Russian ча, and in Church Slavonic
ща or remain.

т + е or и can make че, чи or remain.

д + е or и can make же, жи or remain.

д + я can make жа or remain.

When the dental remains, it is due to the influence
of the written language.

Remember—к, г + -ть are changed to -чъ; but т or
д + -ти to -стъ, and the ending -стъ is extended to other
roots by false analogy.

Remember— $3 + \mathbf{a}$ becomes **ж**а or remains.

c + a becomes sha or remains.

c + io becomes wv

3 + 10 becomes 13

ст + ю becomes щу

Remember.—The euphonic insertion of *я* after labial roots before *ю* and *-енны́й*.

Before other soft vowels *c*, *z* and *cr* as a rule are merely softened in pronunciation, not changed in quality. [v. § 5 (4).]

§ 49. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

At the head of § 42 there is printed a scheme of the four conjugations.

The first conjugation forms its present in -у, -ешь, -етъ, -емъ, -ете, -утъ, added directly on to the root, without any intermediate vowel.

It comprises the following classes:—

I. *Guttural Roots*.—Infinitive in -чъ; e.g. печь to bake, лечь to lie down, мочь to be able.

e.g. печь to bake (root **пек**) жечь to burn (root **жъг**)

Past part. act.: пёкшій жёгшій

Gerundive: печá жёгши

Present part. act.: пеку́шій жгу́шій

Past part. pass.: **печёный** **ожжёный**

Present: **пеку** **печёмъ** **жгу** **жжёмъ**

печёшь печёте жжёшь жжёте

печётъ пекутъ жжётъ жгутъ

á, пеклó, пеклý: жёгъ, жглá, жглó, ж-

Past : пёкъ, пеклá, пеклó, пеклý ; жёгъ, жглá, жглó, жглý

Imperative: пеки; жги

Similarly :—

речь to speak (root *рек*)—this verb is obsolete.
 лечь to lie down (irregular present stem *л́ягу*,
л́яжешь, *л́ягутъ*; but past *лёгъ*, *леглá*, *леглó*,
леглý); imperative *л́ягъ*
 мочь to be able (root *мот*)

Note.—мочь makes *могу́*, *мóжешь*, *мóжетъ*, *мóжемъ*,
мóжете, *мóгутъ*; imperative *моги́*, etc.

Similarly :—

влечь to draw (root *влек*)
 съчь to cut (root *сък*)
 берéчь to shelter (root *берег*, present *берегу́*,
бережёшь . . . *берегутъ*, past *берёгъ*,
береглá, *береглó*, *береглý*)
 стерéчь to guard (root *стерег*, like *берéчь*)
 стрíчся to have the hair cut (root *стриг*)*
 течь to flow (root *тек*)
 запрíчь to yoke (root *пряг*: note the past
запрíгъ, sounded *прыök*, *прigлá*, *-лó*, *-лí*)
 волóчь to drag (root *волок*)

Practically all of these have a fixed accent on the termination.

II. Nasal Roots.—Infinitive in -ять (-атъ after ж, ч, etc.).

Remember.—The Russian я represents the Old Slav ё (French *aim*, *in*, *in* *faim*, *fin*); and the nasal lost in some forms is restored in fuller inflections; cf. *врéмя*, *врéмени*. [v. § 2 (2).]

e.g. начáть to begin (root *чъв*); cf. imperfective
начинáть

* Note past participle passive *острýженный*.

The present gerundive and participle начáя and начáюшíй do not exist, as the verb is perfective and has no present tense; only the past active participles начáвъ, начáвшíй.

But note *past part. pass.* начáтый, or начатóй.

Present (with future meaning):—

начнú	начнёмъ
начнёшь	начнёте
начнётъ	начнúть

Past : нача́ль, нача́ла, нача́ло, нача́ли

Imperative : начни́

Verbs of this class take the past passive participle in т, and mostly throw the accent back on the past tense in -ль and the participle in т. Otherwise the accent is always on the termination.

Such are:—жать (жму) to press (root жьм); жать (жну) to reap (root жьн), чать (root чьн); only used in compounds, e.g. начинáть begin, сочинáть compose; пять (пну, root пьн), mostly used in compounds, e.g. распять to crucify.

Verbs of this class take the verbal substantive in -tie (as also do the liquid roots, v. infra).

e.g. распáтие the crucifixion
попáтие the meaning (of a passage)

There is one other such verb (with a nasal root) of great consequence, only used in compounds, viz. -ять (root ем, Latin *emere*) to take.

In compounds, as with the 3rd person pronoun [v. § 41, V. (2)], и is prefixed to the root.

e.g. **нанять** to hire, **принять** accept, **понять** to understand, **занять** to occupy (oneself) or to lend, **взять** to take up, **снять** to take away; all in the imperfective, **нанимать**, **принимать**, etc.; all having a past participle passive, **нанятъ**, **занятъ**, etc.

The present restores the original root **-емъ**.

e.g. **наймұ**, **наймёшь**, etc., **поймұ**, **возьмұ**, **займұ**, etc.

There also exists a perfective present form in **éмлю**, **внémлю**, **внёмешь**, conjugated like a verb with fixed accent of the third conjugation, but with an imperative accented **внемай**.

III. Sibilant Roots.

These are:—

нести to carry (root **нec**)

везти to drive (e.g. in a carriage) (root **вез**)

грызть to gnaw (root **грыз**)

лѣзть to climb (root **лѣз**)

ползти to creep (root **полз**)

пастти to graze (transitive) (root **паст**)

Example:—

Infinitive: **везти**

Gerundive present: **вези**

Participle present: **везущий**

Gerundive past: **вёзши**

Past participle passive: **везённый**

Verbal, derived from imperfective: **-вожение**

Present: **везу**, **везёшь**, etc.

Past: **вёзъ**, **везла**, **-лó**, **-лѝ**

Imperative: **вези**

Notice.—**лѣзть** has a present **лѣзу**, **лѣзешь**, etc., **лѣзутъ**; imperative **лѣзь**.

IV. Roots in Liquids: -ере-, -оро-, -е.е-, -о.о-.

(1) e.g. **терéть** to rub (root **тыр**, *imperf.* **тиратъ**)
-мерéть to die (root **мър**, *imperf.* **-миратъ**)
перéть to prop (root **пър**, *imperf.* **пиратъ**)

Example:—

Infinitive: **терéть**

Verbal: **трéниe***

Past part. pass.: **тёртъ**, like the roots in nasals

Present gerundive act.: **трúщи**

Present part. act.: **трúшíй**

Past part. act.: **тёртый**

Present: **тру**, **трёшь**, **трёть**, **трёмъ**, **трёте**, **трутъ**

Past: **тёръ**, **тёрла**, **-ло**, **-ли**

Like the roots in nasals, the verbal noun and past participle passive are formed with **т**, and the past tense and past participle passive throw the accent back on to the particle with which they are compounded.

e.g. **умерть**, **умерлá**, **умерло**, **умерли** (**умерéть**)

So, too, **пóдпéрь** (but **-пéрь**) to prop.

(2) **борóть** to fight† **полóть** to weed
порóТЬ to rend **молóТЬ** to grind
колóТЬ to pierce

колóТЬ to pierce.

Present part. act.: **кóлюшíй**

Past part. act.: **кóловшíй**

Verbal noun: **кóлюще**

Past part. pass.: **кóломый**

Present (following the third conjugation): **кóлю**,
кóлешь, **кóлеть**, **кóлемъ**, **кóлете**, **кóлють**

Past: **кóль**, **кóла**, **кóло**, **кóли**

* **трéниe** is disused.

† Used with **-ся**, omitted in example.

These five verbs differ slightly from the verbs in -ереть, -елéть.

- (a) The present as in the third conjugation.
- (B) A uniformly variable accent. [v. § 46.]
- (γ) A regular vocalic past tense with fixed accent.
- (δ) *молоть* is *irregular* in forming its present: *мелю*, *мёлешь*, *мёлеть*, *мёлемь*, *мёлете*, *мёлють*, as though from an infinitive *мелеть*.

V. Roots in *Dentals*.

e.g. *вести* to lead (root *вед*)
гнестi to press (root *гнет*)
цвѣсти to bloom (root *цвѣт*), but v. § 9 (7) (3)
класть to lay (root *клад*)
красть to steal (root *крад*)
 (*краду*, *краденый*)
пасть to fall (root *пад*)
прясть to spin (root *пряд*)
сѣсть to sit (*сиду*, *сидешь*)
растi to grow (root *раст*: *расту*, etc.; past tense *ростъ*)
чѣсть to read (root *чыт*)
идти to go (root *ид*)

and by false analogy—

скрѣсть to scrape (root *скреб*: *скребу*, *скребёшь*—
 скрѣбъ)
грѣсть to row (root *греб*: *гребу*, *гребёшь*, *грѣбъ*)
клясть to swear (root *клян*: *кляну*, *клянешь*—
 клятъ)

These verbs form the past in *ль* added on to the vowel of the infinitive, the real root being disregarded.

e.g. *вѣль*, *велá*, *велó*, *велí*
 So *гнёль*, *цвѣль*, *клáль*

Exceptions, гресть and скресть: грёбъ, греблá, греблí; скрёбъ, скреблá, скреблí; and растí (root раст), расту́, растёшь, рос -ъ, -лá, -лó, -лí.

честь and идтí follow slightly different rules.

Present : идú (in compounds иду, e.g. найду I shall find, etc.), идёшь, идётъ, идёмъ, идёте, идúть

Past (from root шед): шёлъ, шлá, шлí

Participles and gerundives : идá, идúщий, шéдший

честь (only used in compounds, root чыт)

Present : -чту, -чтёшь, -чтуть

Past : -чёлъ, -члá, -члí

Verbal noun : -чтéниe

Participles and gerundives : -чти, -чтúщий, -чтýвшíй, -чтёныи

сéсть has a present сáду accented uniformly like лечь, лíгу. красть accents the present крадú, крадёшь, etc.

With these variations, one example will explain all these verbs.

кraсть to steal

Present gerundive active : крадá

Present participle active : крадúщий

Past participle active : крадшíй

Past participle passive : краденъ, кра́деныи

Present : краду́, -ёшь, -ётъ, -ёмъ, -ёте, -у́ть

Imperative : кради

All these forms use the real root of the verb in the present forms.

Past : краль, кра́ла, кра́ло, кра́ли

So, too, сéмъ, сéла, сéмо, сéми

For the accentuation of the past tense in its inflections, as a rule, monosyllables derived from verbs which accent the terminations throw the accent forward.

e.g. *лёгъ, леглá, леглó, леглý*

*паль** (пастъ) and *сыль* (състъ) have a fixed accent, influenced by the derivative parts from verbs in *-ать* and *-ѣть*.

Forms such as *вёль, плёль* (весті, плесті) throw the accent forward like *лёгъ, рось*; so, too, *кляль* (клясть, *клянú*), *краль* (крастъ).

Except in original verbs, mostly monosyllabic, the past tense, or rather the participle in *-я*, never shifts the accent.

VI. Roots in *в*. These are three in number.

жить to live

плыть to swim

слыть to have a reputation of (Greek *κλύειν*)

e.g. *онъ сливётъ мудрымъ* he is thought wise.

One example illustrates all three.

живть to live .

Verbal noun : *житиё* and *живтьё*

Past participle passive : *-житый*

Gerundive present active : *живи*

Participle present active : *живущій* (but older form, used adjectivally, *живучій*)

Gerundive past active : *живши, живъ*

Participle past active : *жившій*

Present : *живу, живёшь . . . живутъ*

Past : *жилъ, жилá, жилó, жилý*

* Cf. Polish *padł*.

VII. *Consonantal roots with a suffixed vowel a.*

e.g. врать to speak at random, or lie
 лгать to lie (tell falsehoods)
 брать to take (iterative -бира́ть)
 ждать to wait (iterative -жида́ть)
 рвать to tear
 спать to sleep
 ржать to neigh
 драть to tear (present деру́)
 звать to call (present зову́)

Examples :—

	рвать to tear	драть to tear
<i>Verbal noun :</i>	рвáниe	драньé *
<i>Past part. pass. :</i>	рвáнъ	дранъ
<i>Gerundive pres. act. :</i>	рвá	дерá
<i>Participle pres. act. :</i>	рвúщíй	дерúщíй
<i>Past part. act. :</i>	рвáвшíй	дрáвшíй
<i>Present :</i>	рву, рвéшь, рвéгть, деру́, дерóшь, дерёть рвёмь, рвёте, рвутъ дерёмь, дерёте, дерутъ	
<i>Past :</i>	рвáль, рвáла, рвáло, дра́ль, дра́ла, дра́ло, рвáли	дра́ли
So, too, лгать, лгу, лжёшь, etc.	So, too, брать, беру́ ; звать, зову́	

There are many similar forms in the third conjugation, monosyllabic and dissyllabic, e.g. знать to know, спать to sleep, писа́ть to write. [v. § 51 (3).]

* Irregular accentuation.

§ 50. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

The first conjugation consists of consonantal roots attached directly to the terminations. This involves phonological difficulties, and slightly complicates the accentuation and appearance of the forms.

The second conjugation is composed of roots with a vocalic suffix, and thus greater apparent regularity is secured.

The marks of the second conjugation are: infinitive, -нуть; present, -ну, -нешь, -неть, -немъ, -нете, -нуть, or, accented, -нú, -нёшь, -нётъ, -нёмъ, -нёте, -нúть.

The present forms are therefore identical with those of the first conjugation, save for the prefixing of the *н*.

This conjugation falls under two main heads, which must be carefully distinguished.

I. Perfective verbs conserving the “*н*у” suffix throughout all the forms of verb, and mostly accented like the imperfective verb from which they are derived. These verbs [v. § 59, I. (2)] as perfectives have a peculiar meaning of instantaneity—of doing an action once and suddenly. The suffixal vowel of the imperfective verb is dropped, and sometimes the last consonant of the root as well, to avoid heavy combinations of the consonants.

e.g. вертѣть	to turn	вернуть
стегаѣть	to quilt	стегнуть
порхѣть	to flutter	порхнуть
махѣть	to wave	махнуть
двигѣть	to move	двинуть

e.g. дёргать	to pull	дёрнуть
трогать	to touch	тронуть
лопать	to split	лопнуть
топить	to sink	тонуть* to drown
тягивать	to drag	тянуть* to pull
касаться	to concern	коснуться
шептаться	to whisper	шепнуть

There are some exceptions to this rule of accentuation.

e.g. глядеть	to look at	глянуть
кидаться	to leave	кинуть
чёрпать	to take in water (of a ship)	черпнуть
зиять	to gape	-зинуть
кричать	to cry	крикнуть

Note, however, compounds in глянуть have a *variable* accent.

e.g. заглянуть, загляну́, заглянешь, etc.

II. Verbs in -нуть, imperfective and intransitive.

In the past tense the simple root is used, with no suffixal vowel between the last consonant and *ль*, which latter, as in the first conjugation, drops in the masculine singular.

These verbs are distinguished from ordinary imperfectives by having the special *inchoative* meaning of "becoming."

* With variable accent тонешь, тянешь, тянутый.

These verbs are nearly all accented on the penultimate.

e.g. *сбѣпнуть* to become blind
сбѣхнуть to become dry
чѣхнуть to die gradually, or wither
стыннуть to cool
гѣбнуть (гѣбѣть) to decay
тихнуть to become quiet

In this class a few verbs have the past tense in *-нуль*.

e.g. *липнуть* to adhere, *липнуль*; *-снуть* (mostly used in compounds, e.g. *заснѣуть*, *проснѣуть*) to sleep, *-снуль* (as the perfective of *засыпать*, etc.)

The present runs *-сну*, *-снѣшь* . . . *снуть*.*

III. Examples of conjugation in both varieties.

	Perfective and Transitive.	Imperf. and Intrans.
<i>Infinitive</i> :	<i>кинуть</i>	<i>гѣбнуть</i>
<i>Verbal noun</i> :	(<i>кинутіе</i>)	none
<i>Past part. pass.</i> :	<i>кинутый</i> (in т not н)	none
<i>Present part. act.</i> :	none	<i>гѣбнущій</i>
<i>Present gerundive act.</i> :	none	<i>гѣбнущі</i>
<i>Past gerundive act.</i> :	<i>кинувші</i>	<i>гѣбнущівші</i>
<i>Past part. act.</i> :	<i>кинувшій</i>	<i>гѣбнущівшій</i>
<i>Present part. pass.</i> :	none	none
<i>Present</i> :	<i>кину</i> , <i>кинешь</i> , <i>гѣбну</i> , <i>гѣбнешь</i> , <i>кинеть</i> , <i>кинемъ</i> , <i>гѣбнеть</i> , <i>гѣбнемъ</i> , <i>кинете</i> , <i>кинуть</i> <i>гѣбнете</i> , <i>гѣбнуть</i>	
<i>Past</i> :	<i>кинуль</i> , <i>кинула</i> , <i>гѣбъ</i> , <i>гѣбла</i> <i>кинуло</i> , <i>кинули</i> <i>гѣбло</i> , <i>гѣбли</i>	
<i>Imperative</i> :	<i>кинь</i>	<i>гѣбъ</i>

* Cf. the noun *сонъ*, *сна*.

§ 51. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Preliminary.

The characteristic of this conjugation is the present in -ю, -ешь, -етъ, -емъ, -ете, -ютъ.

This conjugation comprises a number of primary original verbs, mostly monosyllables, and vocalic roots (thereby distinct from those in the first conjugation); a few consonantal roots also exist.

It comprises the enormous and increasing number of regular derivatives in -ѣть; the derivative verbs in -атъ and -ятъ, which is the commonest form, and the large class of verbs in -овать, -евать, together with the iteratives in -ывать, -ивать.

Thus, this conjugation perhaps embraces the majority of Russian verbs.

An example of a simple regular verb in -атъ is to be found at § 47.

Verbs in -ѣть are precisely the same, e.g. зеленѣть to become green, the stem зеленѣ- being substituted for the stem желѣ-.

§ 52. THE ORIGINAL VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

I. Those in which the terminations are directly affixed to the root.

(1) *Liquid roots in -олотъ, -оротъ.*

These have been explained in § 49, IV. (2).

(2) *Vocalic roots.*—(a) Roots in *a*.e.g. *зна-ть* to knowThis is conjugated exactly like *желáть* [v. § 47].So, too, *сíя-ть* to shine (*сíяю*).(β) Roots in *и*.e.g. *бить* to beat *литъ* to flow *шить* to sew
вить to wind *брить* to shave *гнить* to rotAll of these form the *past participle passive* in *-ть*.e.g. *битъ*, *вить*, *литъ*, etc.The *verbal nouns* are formed either in *-нтие* or *-неніе*.e.g. *битъё*, *біеніе*, *гніеніе*, etc.

The present tense is formed:—

бью, *бъёшь*, *бъётъ*, *бъёмъ*, *бъёте*, *бъютъ*So, too, *шью*, *гнію*, *лью*, *вью*, etc.But *брить*, *брёю*, *брёешь*, *брёсть*, *брёемъ*, *брёете*, *брёютъ*.The other forms present no variance; e.g. *быя*,
бъющій, *бывшій*, *биль* (*била*, *біло*, *біли*), *бей* (imperative).
[v. § 45.](γ) Roots in *у*.e.g. *дуть* to blow *обўуть* to put on [shoes]These are quite regular, the root being *ду*, *обў*.e.g. *дую*, *дуешь* . . . *дујотъ*, *дуї* *дуя*, *дующій*, *дувшій*, *дузъ*The verbal noun and past participle passive are
in *т*, *дутьё*, *обўтие*, *дуть*, *обўгъ*.(δ) Roots in *ѣ*. *смѣть* to dare* *грѣть* to warm *успѣть* to succeed* Not to be confused with *смѣяться* laugh. [v. § 52, I. (3).]

There are very few original verbs of this type; they are all regularly conjugated like the derivatives in **-ѣть**, or like **желáю** [v. § 47], substituting the root in **ѣ** for **желá-**.

They are all accented throughout on the root-vowel **ѣ**; e.g. **смѣю**, **грѣТЬ**, **успѣТЬ**. For **-дѣТЬ** dress, v. § 57, II.

For **пѣТЬ**, v. following sub-section (**ѣ**).

(**ѣ**) Verbs in **-ыть**.

[For **быТЬ** to be, v. § 57, II. This verb is anomalous, forming its parts—as in nearly all Indo-European languages—out of several separate roots.]

e.g. **крыТЬ** to cover, **мыТЬ** to wash, **выТЬ** to howl, **рыТЬ** to dig, **пыТЬ** to be injured, and **пѣТЬ** to sing, which accents the termination; **пою**, **поѣШЬ**, **поѣТЬ**, **поѣМЪ**, **поѣте**, **поѣТЬ**.

ы fully accented is sounded almost as a diphthong *üi*, and **крыТЬ** may be taken as an abbreviated form of **крѣТЬ**. One example will illustrate them all.

Infinitive: **крыТЬ**

Verbal noun: **крытие***

Past participle pass.: **крытъ***

Past participle act.: **крывшій**

Past gerundive act.: **крывъ**, **крывші**

Past: **крылъ**, **крыла**, **крыло**, **крыли**

Present: **крѣю**, **крѣшь**, **крѣТЬ**, **крѣемъ**, **крѣете**, **крѣютъ**

Present participle pass.: **крѣемый**

Imperative: **крѣй**, **крѣйте**

* From §§ 49 I., II., IV., VI., § 50, § 52, I. (2) (8) (**ѣ**), it will be seen that most of the primitive root-verbs, consonantal and vocalic, have the past participle passive in **и** and not in **ъ**.

II. Verbs with an infinitive in *-ать*, *-ять*; but affixing the root directly on to the terminations of the present tense.

Of these verbs there is an immense number. Some instances can be given. Otherwise they are conjugated like *желáю* or *дýяю*.

		Present.	Accentuation.
тáять	to thaw	тáю	fixed
лáять	to bark	лáю	"
кáпать	to trickle	кáплю (кáпаю)	"
мáзать	to anoint	мáжу	"
рéзать	to cut	рéжу	"
чýять	to hear	чýю	"
прýтать	to hide	прýчу	"
вýять	to wave	вýю	"
орáть	to plough	орио	"
надýться	to hope	надýюсь	"
плáкать	to weep	плáчу	"
двýгать	to move	двýжу (двýгаю)	"
пиcáть	to write	пишú, but пишéшь, variable пишутъ, and пиcанный	
смýяться	to laugh	смýюсь	invariable
вязáть	to bind	вяжú	variable
дремáть	to sleep	дремлю	"
шептáть	to whisper	шепчý	"
сказáть	to say	скажú	"
лепетáть	to stammer	лепечú	"

Nearly all the verbs of this class accented on the last syllable have a shifting accent, like that of *пиcать*.

Notice.—(1) *стенáть*, to groan, has mixed forms: *стенáю*, *стенáешь*, etc., or *стонíо*, *стóнешь*, etc.; past *стенáль* or *стонáль*.

- (2) **колеба́ть** to rock, **колеба́ю** or **колеба́ю**, **колеба́ешь** or **колеба́ешь**, etc.
- (3) **слать** to send, **шлю**, **шлёшь**, **шлётъ**, **шлёте**, **шлютъ** (imperfective **-сыла́ть**).
- (4) **стать** to spread, **стелю**, **стёлешь**, etc., **стёлуть** ; past **стала**, **стала**, **стала**, **стала**.
- (5) **дыха́ть** to breathe, **дышу**, **дышешь**, **дышутъ** or **дыха́ю**, **дыха́ешь**, etc., in compounds.
- (6) **страда́ть** to suffer, **стражду** or **страда́ю** in the 1st person ; otherwise **страда́ю**, **страда́ешь**, etc. **стражду** is a Church Slavonic form, the true Russian would have been **стражу**.

§ 53. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

The Derivative Verbs.

There are three forms of derivatives in the third conjugation :—

- (1) With the infinitive in **-ать** or **-ять**, and stem in **-а-**, **-я-**, mostly derived from nouns, and conserving fixedly the accent of the noun. These are mostly transitive.

e.g. дело thing	дѣлать to do
рабо́та work	рабо́тать to work
печа́ть printing	печа́тать to print
любéзникъ courtier	любéзничать to court

There are *very* few exceptions to this rule of the uniformity of accentuation of noun and verb.

e.g. хвóрый ill	хворáть to be ill
лáска affection	ласкáть to dandle

- (2) With the infinitive in **-ѣть** *accented*, intransitive, and with an inceptive and imperfective meaning.

e.g. зеленѣть to become green (зелёный)
 богатѣть to become rich (богатый)
 желтѣть to become yellow (жёлтый)
 слабѣть to become weak (слабый)
 мужа́ть to become a man (мужъ)

Remember—ж, ш, ч, щ + ъ in Russian make жа, ша, ча, ща. [v. §§ 37 and 2 (3).]

These derivatives in **-წԵ** are all oxytone. Except:—

(a) A few words, e.g. **угрю́мый** severe, **угрю́меть**.

(8) In accordance with the same principle of conserving the accent of the noun or adjective all inceptives in *-ТЬ*, from adjectives in *-авый*, *-ивый*, *-овый*, *-атый*, retain the adjectival accent.

e.g. кровáвѣть	to become bloody
мíлостивѣть	to become merciful
космáтѣть	to become shaggy
безлóдѣть	to be depopulated (безъ людей)
обезпáмятѣть	to lose memory (безъ памяти)

For full model of conjugation of these derivatives, all of which have a fixed accent, v. § 47; *желать*.

(3) I. *Derivatives in -овать, -евать, e.g. чувствовать* from *чувство* feeling.

Infinitive: чувствовать горевать

Verbal noun: чу́вствование горевáние

Past part. pass. :

„ger. and part. act.: чу́вствовавшій, -ши горевáвшій, -ши

Past: чу́вствова́лъ горевáлъ

Present: чу́вству́ю, -е́шь, etc. горю́ю, -е́шь, etc.

Present part. act.: чу́вствую́щій горю́ющій

Present gerundive: чу́вствуя горю́я

Imperative: чу́ствуй горю́й

The accent on these derivatives is fixed, mostly, on the syllable accented in the noun or adjective from which they are derived. But in the present, and those forms derived from it, -ов, -ев changes to -ы, which is accented, when the infinitive is oxytone.

e.g. вѣра, вѣровать to believe

жѣртва, жѣртву, жѣртвовать to sacrifice

бесѣда, бесѣдовать to converse

вѣрваръ, вѣрварствовать to be barbarous

существо а “being,” существовать to exist

вой-на, воевать to war

The foreign loan-words in -ировать. These if quadrisyllabic accent ировать; if pentasyllabic, or beyond, йровать.

e.g. акклиматизировать to acclimatize

[but характеризировать to characterize]

аплодировать to applaud

цивилизировать to civilize, etc.

But notice—здорбый healthy, здорбваться; здорбваюсь to greet. This is really a derivative from the adjective. [v. § 53 (1).]

II. There are a few *original* verbs in -овать, -евать, which really belong to § 52; but, as they are exactly like the derivatives, may be more conveniently treated here.

They all accent in the same way:—

e.g. ковать to forge кую, куёшь fixed accent

основать to found оснѹю, оснѹёшь „ „

совать to thrust сую „ „

клевать to nibble клюю „ „

жевать to chew жую „ „

(4) *Iteratives in -áty, -ítъ.*

There is one aspect of the Russian called iterative or frequentative, signifying habitual or repeated action.

One form of this is an inflection in -áty, -ítъ, -áю, -ítъ.

e.g. **двигáть** to move, perfective **движú** [v. § 52 (3)]

двигáть to move, iterative **двигáю**

начáть to begin, perfective **начнú** [v. § 49 (2)]

начинáть to begin, imperfective

Other examples will be given in the section on the aspects. [v. § 59 (4).]

The conjugation is regular, like **желáю** [v. § 47].

(5) *Iteratives in -ывáть, -ивáть.*

(a) Where the root of the verb is vocalic, in -áváть.

e.g. **дáть** to give **давáть**

быть to be **бывáть**

стáть to become **-ставáть**

обúться to be shod (perf.) **обувáться**

(b) Where the verb is dissyllabic, or the root consonantal in -ывáть, -ивáть, *with the accent on the root.*

e.g. **пишáть** to write **пишывáть**

звáть to call **зовывáть** [v. § 49, VII.]
and -зыváть

торговáть to trade **торговывáть**

игráть to play **игрывáть**

ходíть to go **хáживáть**

говорíть to speak **говáривáть**

For other instances, v. § 59, I. (4).

These forms are conjugated regularly with a fixed accent; e.g. **быváю**, **пишываю**, **говáриваю**, like **желáть** [v. § 47].

Observe.—**дáвáть** (from **дáть**) forms its present like **ковáть** [v. § 53 (3) II.], **даю**, **даёшь**, **даёты**, etc. Similarly **-ставáть** has **-стаю**, **-стаёшь**, etc., and **-знавáть** (from **знати** to know), **-знаю**, **-знаёшь**, etc.

§ 54. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Preliminary.

The fourth conjugation consists mainly of derivative verbs with fixed accentuation.

The infinitive is in **-ѣть** for a few very common original verbs, and in **-атъ**, **-ять** in four others: **гнать** to drive, **спать** to sleep, **стоять** to be worth (connected with **стать** to stand), and **боиться** to fear.

Otherwise the infinitive is in **-ить**, and the present terminations **-ю**, **-иши**, **-ицъ**, **-имъ**, **-ите**, **-ятъ** are added *directly* to the root or stem, the thematic vowel **и** only occurring in the infinitive and forms thence derived. For a complete paradigm of the derivative verb, v. § 47, **вѣрить**, and cf. §§ 44 and 45.

The derivative verbs of the fourth conjugation are mostly transitive, and often causative.

e.g. **слабъ** weak, **слабѣть** to become weak, **слабить** to make weak

старъ old, **старѣть** to become old, **старить** to make old

богатъ rich, **богатѣть** to become rich, **богатить** to enrich

ледян旤 (from **лѣдъ** ice), **леденѣть** to freeze (intransitive), **леденить** to freeze (transitive)

When derived from verbs, forms in **-ить** are usually

the imperfectives of primitive verbs of the first conjugation.

e.g. нести	to carry	носить
везти	to carry	возить
вести	to lead	водить
лечь	to lie	ложиться to lay лежать to lie (intrans.)

Generally speaking, these derivative verbs accent the termination throughout; there are many exceptions, some of which are detailed in § 56.

§ 55. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Original Verbs.

I. Verbs in -ать, -ять.

	гнать	стойть	спать
	to drive	to stand	to sleep
<i>Verbal noun:</i>	гнáние	стойніе	—
<i>Past part. pass.:</i>	гнáнныи	—	—
<i>Gerundive present:</i>	гонá	стóя	—
<i>Present part.:</i>	гонáщій	стойщій	спя́щій
<i>Gerundive past:</i>	гнавъ	стойвъ	—
	гнáвши	стойвшіи	спáвши
<i>Present:</i>	гоню	стою	сплю
	гónиши	стойши	спиши
	гónитъ	стойтъ	спитъ
	гónимъ	стоймъ	спимъ
	гónите	стойте	спите
	гónяты	стойтъ	спять
<i>Imperative:</i>	гонй	стой	спи
<i>Past:</i>	гналъ	стойлъ	спалъ
<i>Present part. pass.:</i>	гонимый	—	—

бóяться, to fear, is conjugated like стойть; the imperative is бóйся.

II. Verbs in -ѣть.

Roots terminating in ѿ, ј, ч change є to а;
 e.g. лежа́ть. Cf. § 37 and § 53 (2), and § 2 (3).

These verbs mostly have a fixed accent on the terminations.

e.g. горѣ́ть to burn, горю́, гори́шь . . . гори́ть
 шумѣ́ть to be noisy, шумлю́, шуми́шь, шуми́ть
 летѣ́ть to fly, лечу́, лети́шь, лети́ть
 сидѣ́ть* to sit, сижу́, сиди́шь, сиди́ть
 дрожа́ть to tremble, дрожу́, дрожи́шь, дрожа́ть
 крича́ть to cry, кричу́, кричи́шь, крича́ть
 лежа́ть to lie, лежу́, лежи́шь, лежа́ть*
 стуча́ть to knock, стучу́, стучи́шь, стуча́ть
 молча́ть* to be silent, молчу́, молчи́шь, молча́ть
 болѣ́ть (impersonal), боли́ть, боли́ть
 велѣ́ть† to command, велю́, вели́шь
 глядѣ́ть* to look at, гляжу́, гляжи́шь, etc.

Some have a moveable accent.

e.g. смотри́ть to look at, смотрю́, смотри́шь . . .
 смотри́ть, смотри́шь, -смотри́тельный
 терпи́ть to endure, терплю́, тे́рпишь . . . тे́рпять
 (but терпимый, тे́рпленный)
 держа́ть to hold, держу́, держи́шь . . . держа́ть
 (past part. pass. держанный)

* Present gerundive си́да, лёжа, молча, гля́дя.

† Takes the dative.

дышать to breathe, дышу, дышишь, дышать
 (Also a secondary form, дыхать, дышу, дышешь,
 дышутъ in the third conjugation)
 любить to love, люблю, любишь . . . любятъ,
 любящій, любимый

вертѣть, to turn, usually has a fixed accent on the termination ; вѣртишь, вѣртить, вѣртятъ are also found.

висѣть to hang (intransitive) has a fixed accent ; but in compounds accents the root, e.g. зависѣть.

A few are accented fixedly on the root.

e.g. слышать, слышу, слышать, etc., to hear
 видѣть, вижу, видѣть to see

As a rough guide it may be stated that verbs of the fourth conjugation with the infinitive in -ѣть, if intransitive have a fixed accent, if transitive have a moveable accent.

Note.—платить, to pay (плачу, платишь, платить, платченный), must be distinguished from плакать, плачу to weep ; платишь . . . платить, to pay, is sometimes written, and commonly sounded плотишь . . . платить.

The past tense of this conjugation ends in -ѣмъ, -аъ, accented like the infinitive.

In this class the irregular verbs хотѣть to wish, and бѣжать to run, must be included. бѣжать has two irregular forms, бѣгу I run, бѣгутъ they run, and derivative forms. смотрѣть, to look, is also given in full, to illustrate a verb of the fourth conjugation with a moveable accent.

<i>Infinitive</i> :	хотѣть	смотретьъ	бѣжать
<i>Past</i> :	хотѣлъ	смотрѣлъ	бѣжалъ
<i>Past gerun.</i> :	хотѣвъ, хотѣвши	смотрѣвъ	бѣжавъ
		смотрѣвши	бѣжавши
<i>Pres. gerun.</i> :	хотѣ [not used]	смотрѣ	бѣжа
<i>Pres. part. act.</i> :	хотѣщій	смотрѣщій	бѣгущій
<i>Past part. act.</i> :	хотѣвшій	смотрѣвшій	бѣжавшій
<i>Past pt. pass.</i> :	—	[o]смотрѣнныи	—
<i>Present</i> :	я хочу	смотрю	бѣгу
	ты хочешь	смотришь	бѣжишь
	она, онъ хочеть	смотритъ	бѣжитъ
	мы хотимъ	смотримъ	бѣжимъ
	вы хотите	смотрите	бѣжите
	они, онѣ хотятъ	смотрятъ	бѣгутъ
<i>Pres. pt. pass.</i> :	хотѣмыи	—	—
<i>Imperative</i> :	хотѣ	смотрѣ	бѣгй

Most dissyllabic original verbs in -ѣть have a variable accent, e.g. учѣть to learn, учу, учишь; пустить to let go, пушу, пустишь; the 1st person singular only is accented like the infinitive, e.g. пустить, слѣжать (they serve). The present gerundive active, present participle active, and present participle passive are generally accented like the infinitive, e.g. люби, любящій, любимыи (любить to love).

The past participle passive is generally accented like the secondary accent of the present, e.g. хватѣть to seize, хвачу, хватишь, хваченный.

Some verbs have a fixed accent, e.g. простить to forgive, прощу, простишь, прощенный, etc.; but such are mostly derivative, e.g. даръ gift, дарить to present, удиво marvel, удивится to marvel.

§ 56. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Derivative Verbs.

The infinitive *always* ends in **-ить**, and the accentuation is fixed; v. § 47 for an example.

As stated in § 54 these derivative verbs are mostly accented on the terminations.

e.g. from adjectives and nouns:—

чёрный	black	чернить	to blacken
пьяный	drunk	пьянить	to make drunk
хитрый	cunning	хитрить	{to dodge to be cunning
мукá*	torment	мучить	to torture
грусть	sorrow	грустить	to grieve

But those derived from verbs mostly have a variable accent, e.g. **ставить** (ставлю, стáвишь), **носить**, **возить**, **водить**, **будить** (to place, carry, convey, lead, awaken), from **стать**, **нести**, **взять**, **бдеть**, v. § 54.

But very many conserve the original accent, especially if the verb has more than two syllables.

спорь	dispute	спóрить	to dispute
ссóбра	quarrel	ссóрить	to set at variance
слáбый	weak	слáбить	to weaken
стáрый	old	стáрить	to make old
кíслый	acid	кíслить	make acid
ни́зъ	low down	ни́зить	to degrade
ни́щíй	poor	ни́щить	to impoverish
въра	faith	върить	to believe

* Distinguish from **мукá** flour: **мучнить** to flour.

Trisyllabic :—

гото́вый	ready	го́това́тиь to make ready
		(past part. pass. гото́вленны́й)
эконо́мъ	economical	эконо́мить to economize
		(trans. and intrans.)

To this last principle that trisyllabic verbs retain the original accent there are many exceptions, especially in all adjectives and nouns denoting substance.

бого́тый	rich	богати́ть to enrich
весёлый	merry	весели́ть enliven
зелёный	green	зелени́ть to make green
золото	gold	золоти́ть to gild (золочёный)
лёдъ	ice, icy	ледени́ть to freeze
го́воръ	speech	говори́ть to say

§ 57. ANOMALOUS VERBS.

A few anomalous verbs remain over for discussion. They are *either* of mixed conjugations or obsolete forms.

I. *Mixed conjugations.*

(1) The same root throughout.

(a) *реветь*, to roar, forms its present like a verb of the first conjugation, e.g. *реву*, *ревёшъ* ... *ревымъ*, and therefore all derivative forms such as *ревущий*, *ревъ* (gerundive), etc.

(8) *хотеть* to wish [v. § 55, II.].

(γ) *-дѣть* (only used in compounds, *одѣть* to dress, etc.) and *стать*, to stand, form their present in *дѣну*, *дѣнешъ*; *стáну*, *стáнешъ*; and belong to the first conjugation.

(δ) посѣтить to visit, обратить to direct, from the 1st person present in щ instead of ч; thus, посѣщу, посѣтишь; обращу, обратишь.

(ε) -шибить (only used in compounds, e.g. ошибаться make a mistake, perfective; imperfective ошибаться, ошибаюсь, etc.) forms its present as in the first conjugation, its past as in the intransitives of the second, e.g. ошибусь, ошибётся . . . ошибутся; past ошибся, ошиблась, ошиблась, ошиблись. The participles are ошибающийся, ошибающийся; gerundives, ошибаясь, ошибвшись.

(ζ) Distinguish зреТЬ, зрю, зряТЬ [зрёныЙ] to look at; and зреТЬ to ripen, зрю, зреешь, etc.

II. Using different roots.

E.g. in English "to be," "I was," "to go," "I went."

(1) *идти* forms its present from the root *ид*, its past from *шед*. e.g.

Present : *иду*, *идёшь* . . . *идутъ*

Present part. and gerundive : *идущий*, *идя*

Past : *шёлъ*, *шла*, *шло*, *шли*

Past part. act. and gerundive : *шедший*, *шедши*

(2) быть to be

Verbal noun : *бытие*

Present : *есть*; *суть*

Past : *былъ*, *была*, *было*, *были*

Future : *буду*, *будешь*, *будетъ*, *будемъ*, *будете*, *будутъ*

Future participle : *будущий*. But v. § 44 (4), footnote.

Past participle : *бывший*

Past gerundive : *бывши ог бывъ*

Imperative : *будь*, *будьте*

(3) **ѣхать**, to drive, has as its present form **ѣду**, **ѣдешь**, **ѣдеть**, **ѣдемъ**, **ѣдете**, **ѣдуть**, and thence the gerundive **ѣдучи**, the participle **ѣдущій**, the imperative **ѣзжай** or **ѣзди**; but in the past **ѣхалъ**, **ѣхавъ**, etc.; **ѣзжать** (iterative). *

The present tense of **быть** is scarcely ever used. **есть** and **суть** only survive in definitions, and are then used for all the persons. E.g. **Богъ есть истина** God is the truth; otherwise, **Пётръ очень мудръ** Peter is very wise, **это мое** a to **твоё** this is mine and that is yours. [v. § 86.]

The compounds of **быть** are peculiar. The future tense is **-буду**, e.g. **забыть** to forget, **забуду**.

пробыть to stay (perfective), **пробыва́ть** (imperfective)

избыть, **избыва́ть** to lose or squander

выбыть, **выбыва́ть** to retire, resign

добыть, **добыва́ть** to earn

перебыть, **перебыва́ть** to frequent

прибыть, **прибыва́ть** to arrive or increase; **прибыль** (fem.) profit

отбыть, **отбыва́ть** to depart or get rid of

убыть, **убыва́ть** to decrease

III. *Obsolete forms.*

(1) **здать**, to build, has a reduplicated present **зізжу**, **зіждешь**, **зіждаетъ**, **зіждемъ**, **зіждете**, **зіждутъ**; and thence the gerundive **зіждущій**, the participle **зіждуши**; and the imperative **зижди** (**зиждь**). For the rest it is like **знаю**.

(2) There are four verbs in “m.” like the Latin *sum* and the Greek verbs in *μι*.

(a) **вѣмъ** I know (root **вѣдъ***).

This is entirely obsolete; but one form survives in the expression **Богъ вѣсть** God knows.

The derivatives are numerous, e.g. **вѣдомый** acquaintance, **вѣдомость** the gazette or the news.

The infinitive **вѣсть** is also a feminine noun, meaning "news"; the iterative form **вѣдатъ** is in common use in compound verbs; **-вѣдатъ** being the perfective and **-вѣдыватъ** the imperfective; the old imperative **вѣдъ** survives as a conjunction, more or less equivalent to *voici*.

(β) **есмъ**, *v. ante a* under **быть**.

(γ) **ѣсть** to eat (root **ѣдъ**).

Present : **ѣмъ**, **ѣшь**, **ѣстъ**, † **ѣдимъ**, **ѣдите**, **ѣдятъ**

Imperative (irregular) : **ѣши**, **ѣште**

Past : **ѣмъ**, **ѣла**, **ѣло**, **ѣли**

Part. and gerundives : **ѣдя**, **ѣдущій**, **ѣвшій**, **ѣвшій**, **ѣдомый**, **-ѣденный**.

(δ) **дать** to give (perfective). The present form (perfective future) :—

дамъ, **дашь**, **дастъ**, **дадимъ**, **дадите**, **дадутъ**

The imperfective forms are supplied by **дава́ть**.
[v. § 53 (5).]

Imperative : **дай**

Past : **далъ**, **дала**, **дало**, **дали**

Part. and gerundives : **давши**, **давшій**, **данный**

* Greek *οἶδα*, English "I wot."

† Cf. Latin *est* he is, *est* he eats; German *ist* and *iszt*.

§ 58. THE ASPECTS OF THE VERBS.

Preliminary.

In § 42 (2) (ii) the "aspects" of the Russian verb were mentioned. They could not be adequately explained until the accident of the verb had been fully treated.

To recapitulate: the verb in early Russian had a present, imperfect and aorist (or preterite) indicative, and a compounded perfect and pluperfect like the English "I have read," and the Latin *gavisis sum*. There were some few traces even of a future, but no conjunctive or other moods.

Russian discarded all the inflections save that of the present, and modified the stem or root to express the same tenses; e.g. *я свистеть* I whistled, is "jai sifflé"; *я свистнул* is "je sifflai"; *я свистал* is "je sifflais," I was whistling; *я свистывал* I used to whistle (now and then).

Each of these "aspects" has its conjugation; and, thus, those Russian verbs which have all the aspects possess nearly the same richness as the Greek verb with its present infinitive and participle, aorist forms, perfect forms, etc.

The perfective regards the action accomplished or to be accomplished, not the process of doing it.

e.g. *Учить-ли вашъ мальчикъ свой урбки?*

Does your boy learn his lessons (as a rule)?

Нѣтъ, но онъ ихъ выучить сегодня is the perfective; there can be no present to an aorist or preterite. The present form is used as a perfect contemplating the completion of the act. The answer is: "No, but he will learn them to-day."

The answer might proceed: и такъ бу́детъ ходи́ть въ школу съ понедѣльника (i.e. the imperfective future) "and so will go to school from Monday next." Or again, я бу́ду стоя́ть ежеднѣвно на однѣмъ и томъ же мѣстѣ I shall stand every day at the same spot. Стани can also be used as the auxiliary, but signifies rather "I will begin to."

e.g. Въ бу́дущемъ году́ ты стане́шь рабо́тать въ конто́рѣ.

Next year you will start working at the office.

The primary division, which very nearly all Russian verbs have, is into imperfective and perfective. Some have further forms, derived from either or both in certain cases, from the imperfective.

The *abstract*, e.g. рыбá пла́ваетъ бы́стро the fish swims quickly (as a habit), этотъ плове́цъ плы́вётъ оче́нь хоро́шо this swimmer is swimming very well (at this instant).

The *inceptive*, e.g. болѣ́ть to fall ill, заболѣ́ть to fall ill gradually. The *iterative* or *habitual*, only used colloquially and in the past tense; e.g. Ходи́те-ли вы ча́сто въ теа́тръ? Нѣтъ, тепе́рь не хожу́, но когда́-то хажи́валъ. Do you often go to the theatre? No, I don't now; once I used to go occasionally. From the perfective the perfective form in -ну́ть [v. § 50, I.] has been

in some verbs specialized into the "instantaneous" or "semelfactive" aspect, an act done on a single occasion.

e.g. Запрещено стучать въ окно.

It is forbidden to knock at the window.

(Imperfective or iterative: стучать, стучу.)

Кто это тамъ стучитъ въ дверь?

Who is that knocking at the door?

Я не могъ войти, такъ стукнулся.

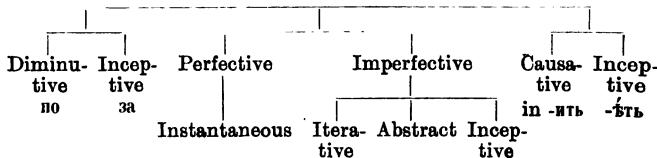
I could not get in, so I knocked.

Further, certain verbs derived from adjectives have causative and inceptive forms in **-ить** and **-ѣть** [v. § 53].

Intrans. Trans.

e.g. зелёный green зеленѣть зеленить
слабый weak слабѣть слабить etc.

Aspects.



Some verbs have no perfective. [v. § 59, IV.]

e.g. предвидѣть to foresee

зависѣть to depend

содержать (содѣржать) to contain

принадлежать (-жу, -житъ) to belong

подлежать to be subject to

соожалѣть (-ю) to regret

предстоѣть (-стою) to impend

сочувствовать to sympathize

предчувствовать to forebode

§ 59. THE FORMATION OF THE ASPECTS.

I. *From original verbs.*

(1) First conjugation.

The simplest form of the uncompounded verb is imperfective.

e.g. **печь** to cook
жечь to burn
нести to carry, etc.

With these may be reckoned the primitives of the third and fourth conjugations.

e.g. **слать** **шлю** I send
бить **бью** I beat
спать **сплю** I sleep
гнать **гоню** I drive

There are some exceptions:—

e.g. **лечь** **лягу** I shall lie down
пасть **паду** I shall fall
сесть **сиду** I shall sit down
стать **стану** I shall stand
дать **дамъ** I shall give

The perfectives of monosyllabic verbs are formed with prepositions, i.e. by compounding the verb.

The imperfectives of **състь**, etc., are:—

състь **садиться**
лечь **ложиться**
стать **становиться** (**становлюсь**, **становится**)
дать **давать** [v. § 53 (5)]
пасть **падать**, **пáдаю**

But these verbs, *when uncompounded*, form iteratives out of the full root with an -а́ть suffix.

e.g. сла́тъ	to send	-сыла́ть
брать	to take	-бира́ть
жда́ть	to wait	-жида́ть
дра́ть	to tear	-дира́ть
звать	to call	-зыва́ть
жечь	to burn	-жига́ть
тере́ть	to rub	-тира́ть
жать	to press	-жима́ть
жать	to reap	-жива́ть
есть	to eat	-ъда́ть
[вѣ́сть]	to know	вѣ́дать

Similarly in the third conjugation, in the *vocalic* stems.

e.g. бить	to beat	бива́ть
дуть	to blow	дува́ть
знатъ	to know	знава́ть, etc.

In the last-named verb a distinction must be made between -знаю, -знаешь, etc. (from -зна́ть), and -знаю, -знаёшь, etc. (from -знатъ). [v. § 53 (5).]

When these primitive verbs are compounded, the imperfective takes the derivative form in -а́ть, and the perfective the original form in -ть, -чъ.

e.g. сжéчъ	to burn down, сожгú	I shall burn down, сжигáть (imperfective), сжигаю I am burning down
помо́чъ	to help, помогú	I shall help; помога́ть (imperfective)

Similarly признáть to recognise, признáю I shall recognise; but imperfective признава́ть, признаю I recognise.

забы́вáть (imperf.)	забы́вáю I forget
<i>but</i> забы́ть (perf.)	забы́ду I shall forget
разсéвáть (imperf.)	разсéвáю I disperse
разсéть (perf.)	разсéю I shall disperse
умирáть (imperf.)	умирáю I am dying
умерéть (perf.)	умрú I shall die
понимáть (imperf.)	понимáю I understand
понять (perf.)	поймú I shall understand [v. § 49, II.]
возставáть (imperf.)	возстаю I rise
возстáть (perf.)	возстáну I shall rise
выноси́ть (imperf.)	вынести to carry away (perf.)

Observe.—прочéсть, прочитáть to read through (perfective); прочитывáть (imperfective).

(2) Second conjugation in -ну́ть.

These verbs, as has been explained, are all either perfective or imperfective in themselves.

e.g. угáснуть to be extinguished (imperf.), past tense угáсь; засóхнуть to dry, засóхъ; кíнуть to throw, imperf. кидáть, past tense кíнуль.

Perfectives in -ну́ть are often called “instantaneous” or “semelfactive,” because they denote a single action.

e.g. кричáть to shout, крикнуть to shout on one occasion
дерзáть, дерзнúть to venture

(3) Third conjugation.

The manner in which the original verbs of this conjugation form their perfectives has been stated in § 59, I. (1).

Derivative verbs in **-еть** are "inceptive" in meaning, e.g. **зеленеть**, *viridesco*, to become green, and naturally imperfective. They must be compounded with a preposition to make them perfective.

Derivative verbs in **-ать**, **-ять** are naturally imperfective, and compounded with various prepositions become perfective, e.g. **дѣлать** to do, **сдѣлать**.

Most original verbs in **-ать**, such as **писа́ть** to write, can only form their perfective by means of a preposition, as such verbs cannot vary their form any further, or make use of a suffixal stem, e.g. **писа́ть**, perfective **напи́сать**.

Thus **напишу́** means "I shall write."

To the third conjugation belong the *iteratives* in **-а́ть** and **-ы́вать**. The former are always accented on the termination, the latter always on the root which is in its fullest form.

e.g. **-честь**, **-чу́**: **чита́ть** to read (imperfective),
прочита́ть (perfective), **читы́ваю** (iterative)
 I read here and there.

звать to call (perfective in compounds only),
 e.g. **созыва́ть** to call together (iterative **созы́ва́ть**).

Verbs whose radical vowel is **o** change the **o** to **a** in forming the iterative.

e.g. лома́ть	to break	ломы́вать
броса́ть	to throw	брáсывать
(abstract sense: брóсить concrete)		
and even усво́ить		усвáивать

In some cases, the difference between the imperfective and iterative is merely accentual, the iterative termination *-а́ть* being always accented.

Imperfective.		Iterative.	
e.g. дви́гаться	move	онъ дви́жется	дви́гáть -дви́гáль
бъ́гать	run	бъ́гаю	бъ́гáть -бъ́гáль
по́лзать	creep	по́лзаю	по́лзáть -по́лзáль
па́дать	fall	па́даю	па́дáть -па́дáль

This distinction only applies to some original verbs of the type of писа́ть [v. § 52 (3)], *in which the suffixal vowel -a- is dropped in the formation of the present; such verbs having a fixed accent in the imperfective on the root, and the infinitive termination -а́ть unaccented.*

(4) Fourth conjugation.

Many of the original verbs in *-и́ть* or *-е́ть*, *-ю*, *-и́шь*, have another form of conjugation in *-я́ть*, like the iteratives in *-а́ть*. In some cases the original form in *-и́ть*, *-е́ть* is perfective, the imperfective being in *-а́ть* (as was seen to be the rule in monosyllabic verbs like знать, мочь, берéчь, знава́ть, -могáть, -берегáть); in others the original form in *-и́ть* is imperfective, and the alternative *-я́ть* or *а́ть* has an *abstract* meaning.

Again, some verbs in *-и́ть* derived from intransitive monosyllabic verbs, such as лечь, стать, etc., are causative.

Perfective.		Imperfective.	
e.g. прошáть	to forgive*	прошáть	
яви́ть	show	яви́ть	

* Простáться say farewell, прошáте good-bye.

Perfective.		Imperfective.
e.g. лишить	deprive	 лишать
пустить	permit	пускать
ступить	tread	ступать
хватить	seize	хватать
купить	buy	покупать (distinguish) купать to bathe)
родиться	be born	рождаться*
насладиться	enjoy	наслаждаться*
посетить	visit	посещать*
убедить	to convince	убеждать*

Imperfective.		
<i>Abstract or habitual.</i>	<i>Concrete meaning.</i>	
e.g. летать	fly	 летать [v. § 58]
плывать	swim	 плыть
бежать	run	бежать (but бѣгать iterative)
садить	plant	садить
ломать	break	ломить
Similarly носить	carry	нести
водить	lead	вести
возить	bear	везти
лазить	climb	лѣзть
блестать	gleam	блестѣть
гонять	drive	гнать

When these verbs are compounded, the derivative form in -ать, -ять is imperfective, the original form perfective.

e.g. **отплывать** **отплыть** to swim away
убѣгать **убѣжать** to run away

* Church Slav change of *а* to *и*, and *т* to *щ*.

e.g. Я ломаю карандаши.
 I (generally) break pencils.
 Медведь ломится въ дверь.
 The bear is breaking into the door.
 Корабль отплываеть.
 The ship is leaving port.
 Лодка уже отплыла от берега.
 The boat has left the shore.
 Немцы убѣгаютъ отъ штыка.
 Germans run away from the bayonet.
 Собака схватила кость и уѣжала.
 The dog snatched the bone and ran away.
 Немцы пришли во Францію съ тѣмъ чтобы
 грабить.
 The Germans came into France to plunder.
 Немцы пришли въ Бельгию и ограбили всѣ
 города.
 The Germans came into Belgium and plundered
 all the cities.

Thirdly, the alternative form in -ать, -ять may be iterative.

	Imperfective.	Iterative.
e.g.	хранить	keep
	видѣть	see
	ударить	strike

In compound verbs the form in -ать, -ять is used for imperfectives, the form in -ить for perfectives.

e.g. Отвѣчу I shall answer.
 Отвѣчай I am answering.
 Разорю ваши города и селенія.
 I will destroy your cities and settlements.
 Въ продолженіе двухъ мѣсяцевъ король разорялъ
 непріятельскіе города.
 For two months the king had been des-
 troying the hostile cities.

Generally the iteratives are formed in **-ывать** or **-ываться**, verbs in **-еть** taking **-ывать**.

е.г. говорить	speak	говаривать
просить	ask	прашивать
ходить	go	хаживать
глядеть	look at	глядывать
видеть	see	видывать

II. *The formation of the perfective in derivative verbs.*

As has been stated, derivative verbs end in **-еть**, **-ать** and **-ить**.

Most verbs in **-еть** are inceptive and naturally imperfective, and generally, if un compounded, have no perfective.

е.г. слабеть to become weak

Verbs in **-ать** form the perfective by compounding, and this rule applies to original verbs like **писать**, **пишү́**, **пишеть**, as well as to derivatives, such as **желать**, **пожелать**.

As to the choice of preposition, there is no general rule; **на**, **разъ**, **по**, **о**, **у**, **вы**, **съ**, etc., can all be used. Only practice can distinguish the perfectives from the compounds.

		Perfective.
е.г. дѣлать	to do	сдѣлать
желать	to wish	пожелать
владеТЬ	to rule	овладѣТЬ
смотреть	to look	посмотрѣТЬ
видѣТЬ	to see	увидѣТЬ
писать	to write	написать
тратить	to lose	истратить

Verbs in **-ить** mostly have a secondary form **-ять**, which in the un compounded verb has an iterative

meaning. Some uncompounded imperfective verbs in -ить form their perfectives, like those in -ать, by compounding with a particle.

e.g. строить	to build	построить
грабить	to plunder	ограбить
сердиться	to be angry	разсердиться
тревожить	to disquiet	встревожить
платить	to pay	заплатить

Again no general rule can be stated.

III. *Aspects formed from a different root.*

Of these there are very few.

	Perfective.	Imperfective.
e.g.	идти	ходить
	поймать	ловить (but понять understand, понимать)
	ударить	бить, and ударять
	положить	класть (кладу)
	взять	брать

	Concrete.	Abstract.	Iterative.
e.g.	ъхать	ъздить	ъзжать
	слышать (слышу)	слыхать (слышу)	
	дышать (дышить)	дыхать (дышеть)	

e.g. Я ъзжу въ го́родъ кáждый день.

I go to the city every day.

Я ъхалъ домо́й съ вóзомъ.

I drove home (in a carriage).

Почти ежеднéвно хожу п'ешкомъ домо́й, но
когда́-то я ъзжалъ вмѣстѣ съ бáриномъ.

Almost every day I walk home; but
sometimes I drove with the master.

IV. *The aspects of compound verbs.*

The general rule is that all compound verbs are perfective. The imperfective is formed by the iterative form in *-а́ть*, *-и́ть*, *-ы́вать*, *-и́вать*; if a derivative form exists in *-и́ть* this serves as the imperfective, and the iterative in *-а́ть*, *-и́ть*, *-ы́вать* conserves the iterative meaning.

	Perfective.	Imperfective.
e.g.	вы́нести to carry out	вы́носить
	вы́носить to endure	вы́на́шивать
	объ́хать to drive round	объ́зжать
	вы́везти to cart out	вы́возить
but	выво́дить to lead about	вы́важивать
	выво́зить to take about (in a carriage)	вы́важивать
	вы́звать to summon	вы́зыва́ть
	вы́играть to gain at play	вы́игрывать

Observe.—*вы* takes the accent, except in the imperfective, which retains the accent of the uncompounded verb. All other prepositions are unaccented, except in the past tenses and past participles passive of monosyllabic verbs, e.g. *избранъ* chosen [v. § 49, II.], *нанять*, *прóдамъ*, etc.

e.g.	выйти to go out	выходи́ть
	проводи́ть to pass (time)	проводи́ть
	обнови́ть to renew	обновля́ть
<i>Observe</i>	положи́ть suppose	полага́ть
	уложи́ть pack	уклады́вать
	должи́ть report (a fact)	докла́дывать

Observe:—

Perfective.		Imperfective.
выбѣжать	to run away	выбѣгать
but выбѣгать	to attain by a run	выбѣгивать
выйти	to go away	выходить
but выходить	to gain	выхѣживать
зѣхать (зѣду)	to go beyond	зѣхжать
but зѣздить	to tire out	зѣзживать
прѣсти	to lead through	проводить
but прѣводить	to accompany	проводжать, or прѣваживать

In some cases the only perfective is the semelfactive in -нуть.

дѣйнуть	to move	дѣйгать
кивнуть	to nod	кивѣть
тронуть	to touch	трогать
шепнуть	to whisper	шептать
крикнуть	to cry	кричать
вздохнуть	to sigh	вздыхать

In forming imperfectives the general rule is that the iterative form of the uncompounded verb is the stem of the imperfective of the compounded verb.

е.g. промѣдлить	to delay	промѣдливать
обмануть	to deceive	обманывать
погаснуть*	to be extinguished	погасѣть
погибнуть*	to perish	погибать
взгляднуть	to look up	взглядывать
замкнуть	to lock up	замыкать

Observe.—тянуть (imperfective) to pull, тѣгивать; but in compounds, протянуть to stretch forth, протѣгивать. [v. § 50, I.]

* But past tense погибъ, погасъ.

e.g. Онъ вытянулъ огромнаго леща.

He pulled up a huge bream.

Ивáнь Ивáнычъ тяжелымку доброго семьянина.

Iván Iványč works hard like a good family man [pulls the shoulder-strap].

Мой другъ неоднократно вытагивалъ менѣ изъ труднаго положенія.

My friend more than once has pulled me out of an awkward situation.

Other instances are:—

Perfective.		Imperfective.
узнать	acknowledge	узнавать (узнаю) [§ 53 (5)]
ослабѣть	to become weak	ослабѣвать
ослабнуть (semelfactive)		
повѣрить	believe	повѣрять
поручить	to commission	поручать
продолжить	to continue	продолжать
помѣтить	to mark	помѣчать
убѣжать	to run away	убѣгать
переплыть	to swim through	переплывать
уѣхать	to drive away (in a carriage)	уѣзжать
отогнать	to drive away	отгонять
описать	to describe	описывать
приготовить	to prepare	приготовлять
придѣлать	to affix	придѣлывать
прижечь	to scorch	прижигать
приказать	to decree	приказывать
примирить	to reconcile	примириять
избрать	to choose	избирать

The learner must *not* confuse those verbs derived from *compound nouns or adjectives*. Such verbs are naturally imperfective, as the formative stem contains the particle, which is not added to the verb.

		Imperfective.	Perfective.
e.g. безъ покоя	without rest	безпокойть	обезпокойть
		disturb	
р鋐умъ	reason	разумѣть	уразумѣть
		understand	
обѣдъ	dinner	обѣдать	dine
		пообѣдать	
забота	trouble	заботиться	озаботиться
наслѣдство	inheritance	наслѣдовать	унаслѣдовать
предчувство	foreboding	предчувствовать	
сочувство	sympathy	сочувствовать	[v. § 58]
безъ людей	without people	безлюдѣть	to become depopulated (обезлюдѣть perf.)

The accentuation of compounded verbs is that of the simple, save with *вы*, v. § 59, IV.

Except втѣрить to repeat

повторить	to repeat, imperfective	повторить
ясниться	to clear up (of the weather)	
изъяснить	explain, imperfective	изъяснить

V. *Causatives and inceptives.*

As stated in § 53 (1) and § 54, verbs derived from adjectives have transitive forms in *-ить*, and intransitives in *-ѣть*.

e.g. синій	blue, синѣть	to turn blue, синить	to make blue
мягкій	soft, мягчѣть	and размягчаться	
сладкій	sweet, усладѣть	and услаждаться	
молодой	young, молодѣть	to grow young,	
		молодить	to make young, etc., etc.

Similarly, transitive verbs in **-ить** are derived from intransitive primitives.

e.g. лечь to lie down	положить to lay
сесть to sit down	посадить to seat
стать to stand (стáну)	становиться to stand, and стáвить to place

e.g. Я постáвилъ вáзу на колонну.

I put the vase on the column.

VI. *по and за as forming depreciatory and inceptive verbs.*

по when compounded with some verbs gives a depreciatory or diminutive sense.

e.g. мыться to wash

помыться to wash here and there

помутить to create squabbles

покуривать, покурить, to smoke occasionally

покушать (perfective поесть) to eat by snacks

покормливать (покормить) to feed slightly

покачивать to waver (покачать perfective,

покачнуть to shake)

покашлять to cough a little (покашливать)

за often creates another inceptive aspect, to begin doing.

e.g. заваривать (зavarить perfective) to simmer

завешивать (завесить) to veil, begin veiling

засвистать to begin whistling

засмѣяться to begin laughing

засыхать (засохнуть) to start drying

затмеваться (затмить) to grow dusk, etc.

затонуть to start sinking (затопливать),

затопить perfective

засѣвать (засѣсть) to begin to sow

But compounds with *за* are often perfective.

e.g. Ру́сские затопи́ли* кора́бль въ Севастóпольской бу́хтѣ.

The Russians sank the ship in the Bay of Sebastopol.

§ 60. REFLEXIVE AND PASSIVE VERBS.

As stated previously [v. *infra*, § 10, § 42 (2) (i) and (ii)] the Russian verb is very defective; it possesses only one conjugated tense, and no subjunctives.

The passive is mostly supplied by the reflexive, *ся* and *сь* being added to the terminations [v. § 41, V. (1)]; *ся* being added to consonantal terminations, *сь* to vocalic. This *ся* is nearly always unaccented; there are very few exceptions.

e.g. я дѣла́юсь I become, am made, дѣла́ется,
дѣла́вшись, etc.

роди́ться to be born, роди́тся, роди́лся, роди́лись
or роди́лись.

Deponent verbs also exist, i.e. reflexive forms in which the reflexive idea has vanished, or is not expressed or required in translation.

e.g. я мóюсь I wash myself, I wash
кора́бль верну́лся домóй the King has returned
home
стыдíться to feel ashamed †

* Distinguish *затопи́ть*, *затопи́ленный* (*затопи́ть*) to sink; and *затопи́ть*, *затопи́ленный*, *затопи́лить*, to heat.

† Distinguish *стыдъ* shame, *стыдíться*; and *стыть* (perfective), *стыну́ть* (imperfective) to be cold.

Similarly in French “*se suicider*,” “*s’approcher de*” are always reflexive or deponent.

But when a verb has as its express object the same person as the subject, the enclitic form *ся* and *сь* (which are *always* sounded *сá* and *съ* [v. § 41, V. (1)]), are *not* used, the full form *себя* taking their place.

e.g. *Алексéй не владéеть собóй.*

Alexis has no self-control.

Мáльчикъ взлéзъ на крышу и убýлся.

The boy crawled on to the roof and was killed.

Онъ покóнчилъ собóй.

He committed suicide [ended by himself].

Онъ оговорýлся что его цифры мóгутъ быть невéрны и себé оградíль этíмъ отъ всéкихъ нарекáнíй.

He defended himself on the ground that his figures might not be correct, and guarded himself on this score from all blame.

Ты не испóльзовалъ своегó положéния а я провёлъ своё врéмя бесполéзнымъ образомъ.

You made no use of your position, and I spent my time uselessly.

Я всегдá имéю при себé портрéтъ жены.

I always have my wife's portrait with me.

The Passive is also expressed in two other ways:—

(1) With a passive participle and the verb *быть* as in English.

e.g. *Кóмната былая убрана цветáми.*

The room was decorated with flowers.

(2) With the verb in the third person plural, with the indefinite meaning of "one," "on," "man."

e.g. **Зовутъ менѣ по фамиліи Монакховыиъ.**

My family name is Monákhov [they call me . . .]

The reflexive forms are never used loosely to express "one another." Thus [v. § 82, IV.] :—

Рабочіе Россіи, Англіи, Франціи и Германіи убиваютъ другъ друга.

The workmen of Russia, England, France and Germany are slaying one another.

Слѣдовали другъ за другомъ.

They followed each other.

THE NUMERALS.

§ 61. PRELIMINARY.

The inflection of the Russian numerals is at first sight very difficult. The problem can be simplified.

(a) In the first place, nearly all the numerals are nouns, and are therefore followed by the genitive plural.

(b) Secondly, being nouns, when compounded, e.g. **двести** (two hundred), each part follows its own declension.

(c) Thirdly, **два**, **три**, **четыре**, 2, 3 and 4, take the equivalent of the old dual, i.e. the genitive singular.

(d) Fourthly, the noun in ordinals is governed by the last element of the numeral.

e.g. **пять козь** five goats

but **две козы** two goats (коза, plural козы)

три рубли three roubles (plural рубли)

тридцать три поезда thirty-three trains

Also **сто** one hundred

двести two hundred (Old Slav dual termination)

триста three hundred (gen. sing.)

пятьсот five hundred (gen. plural)

Other notes on the use of the numerals will be found in § 81.

§ 62. I.—*The Numerals 1–10.*

<i>Arabic.</i>	<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Part of speech.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Collective.*</i>	<i>Fraction.</i>
1	одинъ	Adj.	первый		
2	два	"	второй	двоё, пара	половина
3	три	"	третий†	трое	треть‡
4	четыре	"	четвёртый	чётверо	чётверть‡
5	пять	Noun	пятый	пятеро	пятая§
6	шесть	"	шестой	шестеро	шестая§
7	семь	"	седьмой	сёмеро	etc.
8	восьмь	"	восьмой	восьмеро	
9	девять	"	девятый	девятеро	
10	десять	"	десятый	десятеро	

These are the ten simple forms.

* The most common are **двоё**, **трое**, **чётверо**, **пятеро**, **сёмеро**; but all are equally common in the form **вдвоё**, **втрёх**, etc., meaning 2nd, twice, three times as much. Families are thus designated: **у него** **двоё**, **трое**, **чётверо**, **девятеро**: **пять**, **шесть**, **семь**, etc., **человекъ** **деть**; of an assembly, **ихъ будеть пять**, etc., **человѣкъ**.

† Declined like **баранъ** [v. § 34 (8)].

‡ Feminines in **и**.

§ Supply **часть** part. All the other fractions are similarly formed.

|| Very rare.

Однъ is declined exactly like самъ [v. § 41, VIII.]; the vowel "и" drops out.

Thus—однъ, однъ, однъ, одногъ, одной, etc.

Plural.

	Masc. and Neut.	Fem.
e.g. Nom.	однъ	однѣ
Gen. Loc.	однъхъ	однѣхъ
Dat.	однъмъ	однѣмъ
Instr.	однъми	однѣми

The plural means "some," cf. English "the ones." Both forms, однъ, однѣ, are generally sounded alike (однъ).

e.g. Въдь на этихъ полкахъ осталось только десять книгъ.

There are only ten books left on these shelves.

У менѣ осталось лишь три рубля.

I have only three roubles left.

Какъ на бѣдѣ у менѣ осталось только три яйца.

Unluckily I have only three eggs left.

два, три, четыре are declined as follows:—

Masc. and Neut. Fem.

e.g. Nom.	два	двѣ	три	четыре
Gen. Loc.	двухъ	трёхъ	четырёхъ	
Dat.	двумъ	трёмъ	четырёмъ	
Instr.	двумї	трёмї	четырёмї	

пять to десять are regular nouns like кость, часть, etc.

e.g. Nom. пять

Gen. Dat. Loc. пятї

Instr. пятїо

But, as nouns, the numerals are only followed by the genitive in the nominative or accusative; in oblique

cases they take the case of the nouns ; the numeral is attracted to the case of the noun.

óба, óбъ both, is declined similarly to два.

		Masc. and Neut.	Fem.
e.g.	Nom.	óба	óбъ
	Gen. Loc.	обóихъ	обóихъ
	Dat.	обóимъ	обóимъ
	Instr.	обóими	обóими

II.—*The Numerals 11–90.*

Arabic.	Cardinal.	Part of speech.	Ordinal.
11	оди́ннадцать	Noun	оди́ннадцатый
12	две́йнадцать	„	две́йнадцатый (collective дю́жина)
13	три́надцать	„	три́нáдцатый
14	четы́рнадцать	„	четы́рнадцатый
15	пятнáдцать	„	пятнáдцатый
16	шестнáдцать	„	шестнáдцатый
17	семнáдцать	„	семнáдцатый
18	восемнáдцать	„	восемнáдцатый
19	девятнáдцать	„	девятнáдцатый
20	двáдцать	„	двадцáтый
21	двадцáть оди́нъ [v. § 61 (δ)]	Noun	двадцáть пéрвый
22	двáдцать два, etc.	„	двадцáть вторóй, etc.
30	три́дцать	Noun	тридцáтый
40	сóрокъ	„	сороковóй
50	пятьдесáтъ*	„	пятидесáтый
60	шестьдесáтъ	„	шестидесáтый
70	сéмьдесáтъ	„	семидесáтый
80	вóсемьдесáтъ	„	восьмидесáтый
90	девя́нсто	„	девя́нстый

For the fractions, *v.* пять.

* Sounded pidd'isyát'.

The cardinals from 11–90 are mere compositions of the simple forms and *дέсять* (10).

(1) The “teens” are formed by saying one-on-ten, two-on-ten; the preposition *на* is accented, except in *оди́ннадцать* and *четы́рнадцать*, and *дέсять* is contracted to *дцать*.

The numbers 11–19 are all declined like *дέсять*.

e.g. Nom.	семнáдцать
Gen. Dat. Loc.	семнáдцати
Instr.	семнáдцатью

(2) The numbers 20 and 30 are similar compounds, twó-ten, threé-ten. They are declined thus:—

Nom.	трíдцать
Gen. Dat. Loc.	тридцати
Instr.	тридцатью

(3) *сóрокъ* (40), and *девяносто* (90), are nouns of the first conjugation. *сóрокъ* accents the termination throughout, e.g. *сóрокá*, *сóрокý*, etc.

(4) The cardinals 50, 60, 70, 80 decline both parts *separately and similarly*.

e.g. Nom. Voc. Acc.	сéмьдесять
Gen. Loc. Dat.	семи́десяти
Instr.	семи́десятью

As though the two words were not written together.

III.—*The Numerals 100–1,000,000.*

Arabic.	Cardinal.	Part of speech.	Ordinal.
100	сто	Noun	сóтый*
200	две́сти	Adj. & noun (joined)	две́хсóтый
300	три́ста	” ”	трёхсóтый
400	четы́реста	” ”	четы́рёхсóтый

* Collective сóтни.

<i>Arabic.</i>	<i>Cardinal.</i>	<i>Part of speech.</i>	<i>Ordinal.</i>
500	пятьсотъ	Two nouns	пятисотый
600	шестьсотъ	" "	шестисотый
700	семьсотъ	" "	семисотый
800	восемьсотъ	" "	восемьсотый
900	девятьсотъ	" "	девятисотый
1,000	тысяча	Noun	тысячный
2,000	две тысячи	Adj. & noun	двухтысячный
3,000	три тысячи	" "	трёхтысячный
4,000	четыре тысячи and so on	" "	четырёх- тысячный
60,000	шестидесять тысячъ	Three nouns	шестидесяти- тысячный
100,000	сто тысячи	Nouns	сто- ог ста- тысячный
1,000,000	миллионъ	Noun	миллионный

сто is declined as follows:—

<i>Singular.</i>	Nom. Voc. Acc. сто	
	Gen. ста, etc.	

Similarly девяносто. But when сто is used in a long figure, with others, all the oblique cases are uniformly ста (the genitive); and similarly девяносто.

<i>Plural.</i>	Nom. Voc. Acc. ста	
	Gen. сотъ	
	Dat. стамъ	
	Instr. стами	
	Loc. стахъ	

All the compound numerals in this division decline each part separately.

e.g. *двести, двухсотъ, двумстамъ, двумыстами,
двухстахъ, etc.*

тысяча is a regular feminine noun; but the instrumental singular is sometimes *тысячью*, as though it were a noun of the third declension.

сто, сорокъ, девяносто, when declined with nouns, extend the genitive ending to the dative and instrumental, optionally to the locative.

e.g. Nom. Acc. *сто сорокъ листовъ* 140 leaves (of paper)

Gen.	<i>ста сорокá листовъ</i>
Dat.	<i>ста сорокá листамъ</i>
Instr.	<i>ста сорокá листами</i>
Loc.	<i>ста сорокá листахъ</i>

IV. (1) *Frequency.* Examples of use:—

одинъ разъ once, or однажды

два раза twice, or дважды

три раза thrice, or трижды

четыре раза four times, etc., or четырежды

пять разъ [v. § 24 (4)]

This is the only and regular way of forming this series.

(2) *Distributives* are formed with the preposition по, e.g. по два, по три, по четыре; but with all other numbers in the dative: по пяти, по сту, по сороку, по девяносту (or по сорокá).

(3) *Nought* is нуль, masculine.

(4) *The noun is governed by the numeral immediately preceding, however high the whole numeral may be.* In the nominative, or accusative, the noun thus enumerated is in the singular after одинъ; gen. sing. after два, три,

четыре; gen. plural after all the others. In the oblique cases, i.e. all except the accusative and nominative, the numeral and noun alike are in concord in the appropriate oblique case.

e.g. двадцать одинъ фунтъ 21 pounds

тридцать три коня 33 horses

меньше двадцати пяти минутъ less than 25 minutes

(5) *Decimals.*

нуль цѣлыиъ девять десятыхъ копейки съ версты.

9 коп. to the verst (nought wholes and nine tenths . . .).

Отъ одной до ста шестидесяти вёрстъ, по одной цѣлой, четыре тысячи трёста сѣмьдесят пять десятитысячныхъ копейки съ пассажира.

From 1 to 160 versts at 1·4375 коп. per passenger per verst.

(6) *Compound ordinals.* Only the last numeral is declined.

e.g. Двадцать девятаго декабря (месяца) въ тысяча восемьсотъ девяносто седьмомъ году.

On the 29th Dec. 1914. [v. § 24 (1).]

Въ сто девяносто седьмомъ году до рождества Христова.

In 197 B.C.

Гостиница съ болѣе чѣмъ двумястами номерами. A hotel with over 200 rooms.

Цѣна комнатъ снижается лѣтомъ до пятидесяти процентовъ.

The price of rooms is reduced in the summer by 50%.

As a complete example, 2,367,134·8295 aršins (аршинъ a measure of length about a yard) would be thus declined:—

Nom. Два миллиона, триста шестьдесят семь тысяч, сто тридцать четыре цыльыхъ, восемь тысяч двѣстѣ девяносто пять десяти тысячныхъ аршина.

Acc. As genitive or nominative; in this case as nominative.

Gen. Двухъ миллионовъ, трёхсотъ шестидесяти семи тысячъ, ста тридцати четырёхъ цыльыхъ, восмий тысячъ двухсотъ девяноста пятнадцати тысячныхъ аршина.*

Dat. Двумъ миллионамъ трёмстамъ шестидесяти семи тысячамъ ста (ог сту) тридцати четырёмъ цыльимъ, восмымъ тысячамъ девяноста (ог девяносто) пятнадцати тысячными аршина.

Instr. Двумъ миллионами тремястами шестью-дѣсятью, семью-тысячами, ста тридцатью четырьмъ цыльими, восмью-тысячами девяноста (ог девяностомъ) пятнадцати тысячными аршина.

Loc. Двухъ миллионахъ трёхстахъ шести-дѣсяти, семи тысячахъ, ста тридцати четырёхъ цыльыхъ, восмий тысячахъ девяноста (ог девяносто) пятнадцати тысячныхъ аршина.

(7) *два, три, четыре, in the nominative or accusative, are followed by the noun in the genitive singular or by the nominative or genitive plural of adjectives.*

* Gen. sing., the decimal being expressed by $\frac{8295}{10000}$ of an aršin. The last numeral always governs the noun.

This arbitrary rule is based on the fact that **два**, **три**, **четыре** in the older language took the dual; the dual having become obsolete, use was made of whatever inflections most closely approximated to it.

e.g. Nom. **два высокихъ** (or **-ie**) **солдата** two tall soldiers

Gen. **двухъ высокихъ солдатъ**

Dat. **двумъ высокимъ солдатамъ**

Instr. **двумъ высокими солдатами**

Loc. **двухъ высокихъ солдатахъ**

With nouns only used in the plural, there are alternative forms, **двои**, **трой**; otherwise the collectives are used.

e.g. **ворота** the gates **чётверо** **воротъ** four gates

But the ordinary collectives, with the genitive plural, may be used instead of **двои**, **трой**, **чётверо**.*

двои and **трой** are declined like **оба**, but accent the terminations **ыхъ**, **ымъ**, **ыми**.

чётверо and all the other similar collectives form the oblique cases like plural adjectives, accenting the termination, e.g. **пятерыхъ**, etc.

(8) **половина**, standing by itself, is "a half."

It is also used in composition with other words, e.g. **поптора** $1\frac{1}{2}$ (for **попъ-втора**; cf. German, *anderthalb* $1\frac{1}{2}$, *dritthalb* $2\frac{1}{2}$); also in words like **попуна** half a pound, **попчаса** half an hour, **попода** half a year, etc. For further notes, v. § 81, IV.

* So, too, in Latin: *templum*, *tria templa*; but *aedes*, plural *trinae aedes*.

Both parts are separately declined; all the oblique cases of *полъ* being *полу*.

	<i>Masc. Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
	1½ aršíns	1½ versts
e.g. N.V.A.	полторá арšíна	полторы́ версты
Gen.	полу́тора арши́нъ*	полу́торы вё́рстъ
Dat.	{ полу́тора } арши́намъ	полу́торъ верстáмъ
Instr.	{ полу́тора } арши́нами	полу́торою верстáми
Loc.	{ полу́тора } арши́нахъ	полу́торъ верстáхъ

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Half-pound		
N.V.A.	полфúнта	полуфúнты
Gen.	полуфúнта	полуфúнтовъ
Dat.	полуфúнту	полуфúнтамъ
Instr.	полуфúнтомъ	полуфúнтами
Loc.	полуфúнть	полуфúнтахъ

However, usage varies with regard to *полторá*, and the masculine forms are often employed with feminine nouns. The noun-component is declined in full in compounds like *полфúнта*, and bears and retains its own accent.

Пóлдень and *пóлночь*, "noon" and "midnight," are declined *полу́дни*, *полу́ночи*, and so on, the accent always resting on the second syllable, and the *полу* being invariable.

Similarly, *полторáста* 150, *полу́тораста*, in all oblique cases.

* v. § 24 (4).

Other fractions are expressed much as in English.

e.g. **две съ половиной бутылки** two and a half bottles
тридцать пять и семнадцать **тридцать восемыхъ**
 $35\frac{17}{38}$
четыре и три четверти $4\frac{3}{4}$

(9) *Dates.*

The date and the month are put into the genitive, and the year, if accompanying, into the ordinal with the genitive **года** (**годъ**) year. If the year stands by itself, the locative **въ годъ** is used.

In *dates* the plural of **годъ** is **лѣтъ** (**лѣто** summer).

e.g. **двадцать пятаго декабрія тысяча девятисотъ**
четвѣртаго года, 25th December 1904
въ тысяча восемисотъ пятнадцатомъ году
in 1815
шестидесятъ лѣтъ тому назадъ sixty years ago

Numerals preceding the noun are exact denotations ; when they follow, approximate.

e.g. **года чѣрезъ три** in about three years' time
послѣ трѣхъ лѣтъ after three years

§ 63. THE ADVERBS.

The adverbial forms of adjectives are simply the neuter singular predicative, excepting adjectives in **-скій**, which form **-ски**; e.g. **стрѣго** sternly, **дѣлоро** dearly, **раньше** earlier, **экономически** economically.

Other adverbs will be learnt in the course of reading.

§ 64. THE PREPOSITIONS.

These are very commonly used in Russian, and are dealt with in §§ 70-80 in the Syntax.

§ 65. THE CONJUNCTIONS.

The conjunctions are best acquired in the course of reading. As the Russian verb possesses no moods, and as there is no inversion of sentences, the conjunctions present no difficulty. Some few may be noticed here.

и “and.”

Аа “yes,” is also used for “and,” but has a corroborative strengthening significance, and belongs to the older language.

и also is used in a sentence to mean “also.”

а “but” or “and,” when used in contradistinction rather than conjunction.

но “but” in contradistinction, or denial.

ещё “also.”

или “or.” или—или, “either . . . or.”

ни—ни “neither—nor.” As will be seen in § 85, these require a double negative, i.e. a negated verb as well.

§ 66. THE INTERJECTIONS.

These are best learnt from reading. Russian being a phonetic language, these primitive sounds are written as pronounced, not conventionally as in English; e.g. “hush” for “sh,” “ough!” for pain.

e.g. in Russian ухъ! охъ! ахъ! etc.

Other interjections are developments from recognised words, e.g. “Lo” (from “look”).

So, too, in Russian увы! woe!

SYNTAX.

§ 67. PRELIMINARY.

In comparison with most other European languages Russian syntax presents comparatively few difficulties. The order is much the same as in English—subject, verb, object, adverbs.

There are no subjunctives, the use of which becomes technical as in French; gender is in the main sex, or determined by the suffix. Thus in French “*sa majesté le roi*” is feminine, and a following sentence must run: “*elle a bien voulu.*” In Russian, Его Императорское* Величество Царь созывала; the verb is in the masculine, though Величество is neuter.

In German, again, “*das Mädchen*” the girl, is supposed to be followed by neuter pronouns; in Russian, as in English, child *дитя* (neuter), *личо* person (neuter) may be followed by *онъ, она*, according to sense. Or again, *дέсять* is feminine, but “there remained ten” (neuter, *general impersonal sense*) is *осталось дέсять.* [v. § 62, I.]

The Russian richness in inflections gives the language a freedom of order such as was possessed by ancient Latin and Greek. But whereas the order of Latin was conventionalised and stiffened, Russian retains the natural order of words, with the liberty of slight transposition for emphasis; adjectives precede, unless otherwise desired; in fact, much the same considerations obtain as in English. But ambiguity ceases, the inflection defining the relations.

* v. § 83, IV.

In one respect, as stated in § 33, Russian shows less flexibility in the formation of compound nouns. German (amongst modern languages) is the most adaptable, e.g. "Eisenbahnfremdverkehrverbindungen" Railway - foreign - traffic - connections. English tacitly has the same power, with some ambiguity, e.g. The Foreign Office Clerks' Providence Society; the wooden baby's chair. In Russian all such relations *must* be stated by means of adjectives; e.g. *желѣзная дорожка* the railway, *военные запасы* war supplies, *на полицейскомъ храненіи* in police detention.

§ 68. THE ARTICLE.

The article does not exist in Russian. Nevertheless *тотъ* is occasionally used for the definite article, and *одинъ* for the indefinite, where the sentence requires amplification.

e.g. In the folk-tales :—

Жилъ-былъ одинъ бѣдный вдовѣцъ.

There once lived a poor widower.

Тотъ самый торговецъ который мнѣ продалъ велосипѣдъ советуетъ теперѣ мнѣ купить мотосиклѣтъ.

The same dealer who sold me a bicycle now recommends me to buy a motor-cycle.

§ 69. THE CASES.

I. *The Nominative*.—As in all languages, the nominative is used for the subject of the sentence. It can *never* be governed by any preposition.

II. *The Vocative* has survived only a very few strictly ecclesiastical phrases.

e.g. Бóже from Богъ God
 Гóсподи from Господъ Lord
 Отчe from Отéцъ Father
 Христé from Христóсь Christ
 Княже from Князъ Prince
 Иисúсе from Иисúсь Jesus
 Сыне from Сынъ the Son
 Царю from Цары Tsar
 Владыко from Владыка Lord

In modern Russian the nominative takes its place.

III. *The Accusative* is properly the case to denote the direct object; e.g. Jack (nominative) built a house (accusative) Ивáнь пострóилъ домъ.

However, in modern Russian, except in the singular of the second declension, special accusative forms no longer exist. [v. § 13.]

Hence a rule has sprung up that, *except* for nouns of the second declension in the singular, the objective case shall be the genitive whenever the object is a living being; also, without any exception, whenever the sentence is negative (in which event the genitive is really partitive; e.g. "I did not see him" is equivalent to "I saw nothing *of* him" *). In every case the nominative form is used.

e.g. Принеси сюдá яблóки.
 Bring the apples here.
 Приведи завтрап твоегó дру́га.
 Bring your friend to-morrow.

* Cf. in modern Spanish the use of *á* when the object is a person, e.g. "él conduzo á Juan" he brought John.

Я не видѣлъ чемодана.

I did not see the portmanteau.

Она не нашла лошади.

She did not find the horse.

Никогда не поймаешь рыбы.

You never catch a fish.

Я привёлъ двухъ лошадей.

I have brought two horses.

Besides this very limited use as the objective case, this accusative case, but never its genitive substitute, is found with the following meaning: to indicate duration in space or time.

e.g. **Я ждалъ тебя все утро, целый день, всю ночь, всю неделю, полчаса.**

I was waiting for you all the morning, the whole day, all the night, all the week, half an hour.

Я гулялъ три часа и прошёлъ шесть вёрстъ.

I walked for three hours and went six versts.

Я прошёлъ все разстояніе между Варшавой и Краковомъ.

I went all the distance between Warsaw and Cracow.

Лётчикъ пролетѣлъ половину пути къ нашей помѣстію.

The airman flew half the way to our country house.

IV. *The Genitive.*

In modern Russian the genitive is used for a variety of purposes. The simple genitive indicates the relationship of possession between two substantives.

In English there are two methods of indicating the genitive: the possessive case in *s*, and the preposition *of*.

(i) The simple genitive is used in three distinct ways: (a) subjective, (B) objective, (γ) defining.

e.g. (a) Wilson's house, i.e. Wilson has a house.

(In such cases an active verb may be substituted.)

Cæsar's hatred, i.e. Cæsar hates.

(B) Henry IV.'s assassin, i.e. Henry IV. *was* assassinated.

The torpedoing of the *Formidable*, i.e. the *Formidable* was torpedoed. (I.e. a passive verb may be substituted.)

(γ) A man of great talent, i.e. a greatly talented man.

In the last case an adjective may be substituted, and such phrases are really *inversions* of adjectives.

These subjective and objective genitives may be compounded.

e.g. U 21's torpedoing of the *Formidable*, i.e. U 21 torpedoed the *Formidable*.

In other languages there is great ambiguity on this score. In Latin the genitive is used both subjectively and objectively: thus "Cæsar's odium" may mean either that Cæsar hates, or that Cæsar is hated; so, too, in French, "la haine de César."

In English there are irregular attempts to distinguish by means of the two forms, e.g. "Cæsar's hatred," or "the hatred of Cæsar."

Lastly, a subjective or objective genitive may be general or particular, permanent or casual. In the former event, an adjective can in very many cases be substituted.

e.g. God's love = the Divine love.

The king's banner = the royal banner.

But one does not speak (except jokingly) of the "royal pocket-handkerchief" or "the 'divine' love (of Zeus) for Semele."

In Russian we find the simplicity of French with the accuracy attempted by English, which has a rich stock of adjectival forms.

(1) *Subjective genitives* (nearly always possessive).

When *general*, the adjective of the governing noun is used; when *particular*, the genitive.

e.g. Нога́ слоно́й раздави́ла чéрепъ тýгра.

The elephant's leg shattered the tiger's skull.
(Possessive genitive.)

Нога́ слоно́й почтí безъ волóсь.

The elephant's leg is almost hairless.
(Generic genitive.)

Слонóвая кость стóить дýрого.

Ivory [literally, elephant's bone] is dear.

Кавайльáкъ, убíйца Генрýха четвéртаго.

Cavaillac, the assassin of Henry IV.

(Objective.)

Иоáнновы [наёмные] убíйцы.

Iván (the Terrible's) [hired] assassins.

(Subjective.)

Шéтькины дни тянулись однообразно.

Pétya's days dragged on monotonously.

(Subjective and general.)

Именины Госудáра.

The Emperor's birthday (as a mere fact).

Госудáревы именинны.

The Emperor's birthday (generalized, e.g. as a public holiday).

Закáть сóлнца.

Sunset (as a particular fact on a certain day).

Сóлнечный закáть.

Sunset (as a natural phenomenon).

Солдáтская свирéпость.

Soldiers' savagery (in general).

But Свирéпость солдáт.

The soldiers' savagery (in particular).

Входъ въ дворéцъ.*

The entrance of the palace (in particular).

But Дворцóвые вхóды стрóго охраняются солдáтами.

Palace entrances are strictly guarded by soldiers (in general).

Дорóга (or мосcé) къ Москвé; отъ Москвí.

The Moscow high-road (direction to or from).

* I.e. in a direction; cf. English "the entrance into the station." But in French only "l'entrée de la gare," "la route de Versailles,"

Москóвskи́я дорóги óчень хороши́.

The Moscow roads are very fine.

Морскóе дно.

The bottom of the sea (generally).

Дно мóря.

The bottom of the sea (particularly).

Я жилъ въ отцóвскомъ дóмѣ.

I lived in my father's house (with my parents).

Я жилъ въ дóмѣ отцá.

I lived in my father's house (i.e. his, not mine or Mr. Smith's).

(2) *Objective genitives.*

These, too, may be general or particular, but the word in the genitive cannot be adjectivally expressed.

However, Russian avoids ambiguity by using the genitive or any other case with a suitable preposition, e.g. such as would be required by the verb corresponding to the governing noun.

e.g. **Крестьянская любóвь къ пёстрымъ украшénиямъ.**

The peasant love of gaudy ornaments (general proposition).

Любóвь этого мужчíны къ жéнщинамъ.

This man's love of woman (in particular).

Нéнависть къ Цéзарю.

The hatred of Cæsar (felt against Cæsar).

(Contrast **нéнависть Цéзаря** the hate Cæsar felt.)

У него сильная любовь къ искусству.

He has a great love of art.

Убийство Эдуарда второго.

The murder of Edward II.

Надежды Петя на повышение.

Peter's hopes of promotion (in particular).

(Петины in general.)

Рассказчикъ этой сказки.

The narrator of this fairy tale.

Сказочный рыцарь.

A fairy knight.

In conclusion.—(1) The possessive or other adjectival form must be substituted for the noun in the genitive in all phrases, where the sense is generalized.

(2) When the genitive is objective, the relationship is usually more closely defined by a proper preposition; but the possessive adjective is almost always inadmissible.

(3) In Russian, except for the proclitic pronouns *erо*, *еи*, *ихъ*, the genitive always *follows* the noun.

(4) The possessive adjective is *also* used to avoid a *succession* of genitives.

e.g. Могила Вѣры находилась въ глубинѣ кладбища.

Vera's grave was at the bottom of the cemetery.

But Подробности Вѣриной смерти.

The details of Vera's death ("de la mort de Vѣra").

(ii) There exists a partitive genitive [v. § 24 (1)] in "y" with some nouns of the second declension,

and a distinction is made which can only be learnt by practice; generally speaking, when quantity, not quality, is implied, the form in "y" is preferred to that in "a."

e.g. **Подайтe мнъ чай.**

Give me some tea (donnez-moi *du thé*).

Два фунта сахара.

Two pounds of sugar.

У насъ есть два сорта чая.

We have two sorts of tea.

(iii) The genitive (and similarly the dative) frequently replaces the English nominative, in the impersonal constructions, for which the Russian language has a predilection.

e.g. **Завтра, мoжетъ-быть менъ не будетъ здѣсь.**

To-morrow, may-be I shall not be here;
literally, "there will not be of me here."

Миѣ не хoчется спать.

I do not want to go to sleep.

Его нѣть дoма.

He is not at home.

(iv) The genitive is replaced by the dative, in many instances, of ownership or possession.

e.g. **Цѣна этимъ лошади мъ двѣстi рублей.**

The price of these horses is 200 roubles.

Онъ мнъ старый другъ.

He is an old friend.

Such sentences are really instances of the *dativus commodi*.

(v) The genitive is used after comparatives
[cf. § 38, V.]

e.g. *Дядя моложе своєї племінниці.*

The uncle is younger than his niece.

Россія въ семнадцять разъ больше Франції.

Russia is seventeen times bigger than France.

(vi) The genitive is the objective case, as stated in § 69, III.

(vii) The genitive is used after the adjectives and verbs denoting *fulness, worthiness, deprival, fear, desire, expectancy, and value.*

e.g. *Жизнь полна горя.*

Life is full of sorrow.

Онъ достоинъ наказанія.

He deserves to be punished.

Вашъ вопросъ касается вышеизложенныхъ пунктовъ.

Your question touches points previously defined.

Я прошу вашего прощенія.

I beg for your forgiveness.

Онъ лишился жизни.

He deprived himself of life (committed suicide).

Судъ лишилъ Петра Ивановича всѣхъ правъ состоянія.

The court deprived Peter Ivánovič of all rights of position (civil rights).

Всѣ люди желаютъ здороваья.

Everybody desires health.

Я боюсь грома и молнии.
I fear thunder and lightning.
Это стоит денег.
This costs money.

But if the price is stated, the accusative.

e.g. Бумага стоит три рубли пудъ.
Paper costs three roubles a *pud*.
Никогда не ожидай такого счастья.
I never expected such luck.

(viii) To denote *dates on which*.

e.g. Третьяго дня Анна умерла.
On the day before yesterday Ann died.
Шестнадцатого декабря.
On the 16th December.

(ix) In all cases where the object of the verb is impliedly partitive, i.e. the word "some" might be added, or when in French the "partitive article" *du*, *des*, would be used.

e.g. Принесите вина. Bring some wine here.
Apportez du vin.

So, too, after *all* words of quantity.

e.g. мало little, немного a little, довольно enough, etc.

(x) As in Latin to denote *descriptions*.

e.g. Онъ человѣкъ желѣзной настойчивости.
He is a man of iron persistence (will).
Пётръ Великій былъ высокаго роста.
Peter the Great was a man of great height.
Онъ былъ тогда шестидесяти лѣтъ.
He was then sixty years old.
(Or, ему было тогда шестьдесятъ лѣтъ.)

V. *The Dative.*

As in other languages, the dative marks the personal relation or effect.

e.g. **Мнѣ полѣзно читать по-рѣсски.**

It is useful to me to read Russian.

The dative is also extensively used instead of the genitive. [v. § 69, IV. (iv).]

As in Latin, French, German, and other languages, many verbs which in English take a direct object are intransitive and take the dative.

e.g. **грозить кому** threaten

удивляться чему be surprised

завидовать кому or **чему** envy

смѣяться чему to rejoice at a thing (but
смѣяться надъ кѣмъ of a person)

вѣрить кому or **чему** believe (but **вѣровать**
въ Бóга believe in God)

Other instances of verbs requiring a dative are:—

жаловаться кому на **кого** to complain to A of B

молиться кому за **что** to pray to someone for
something

кланяться кому to greet (to bow down to)

мстить кому за **что** to take vengeance on
somebody for something

напоминать что кому to remind somebody of
something

учить кого чему to teach somebody something

учиться чему to learn something

But only practice can supply a full knowledge of such usages.

e.g. Чему вы смеётесь ?

What are you making merry of ?

Я вѣрю только математическимъ доказательствамъ.

I believe only mathematical proofs.

Я смеюсь надъ вашимъ высокомѣриемъ.

I smile at your arrogance.

Отсѣль грозить мы будемъ Швѣду.

From this spot we shall threaten the Swede.

Мы удивились его скорому возвращенію.

We were astonished at his swift return.

Я завидую вашему богатству.

I envy your wealth.

Я завидую Ротшильду.

I envy Rothschild.

VI. *The Instrumental.*

This case denotes the *instrument by which* something is done, or the *agent by whom* something is done.

Thus :—(1) It is used after passive verbs.

e.g. Царь былъ помазанъ архиепископомъ.

The Tsar was anointed by the archbishop.

Царь былъ помазанъ мѣромъ.

The Tsar was anointed with the chrism.

(2) It also denotes the means by which a thing is done or made.

e.g. Дерёвья рубить топорами.

Trees are cleft with axes.

(3) It is used predicatively (like the dative in Latin) after verbs of becoming, or бытъ in the past tense.

e.g. Ивáнь бытъ моíмъ слугóю.

John used to be my servant.

Онъ сдѣмался больны́мъ.

He made himself ill.

Hence such irregular concords may arise as: онъ назывáлъ менé дуракомъ he called me a fool.

(4) It is used to denote the mode or manner where we in English should say "like . . ."

e.g. Орёлъ леты́лъ стрѣлою.

The eagle flew like an arrow.

Онъ вообража́етъ себé вели́кимъ госудáремъ.

He fancies himself a mighty emperor.

(5) The instrumental is also used with words of measure.

e.g. Онъ продолжáлъ идти мѣрнымъ шáгомъ.

He continued to go at a regular pace.

Мóре здѣсь глубинóй въ дѣсять сажень.

The sea is here 10 sažens deep.

Температúра больнóго повысилась двумá градусами.

The patient's temperature has gone up two degrees.

But Этотъ садъ на арши́нъ шире твоегó.

This gar-den is an aršin broader than yours.

Моё яблоко въ двадцать разъ слáще тогó.

My apple is twenty times sweeter than that one.

(6) The instrumental is used with words of quality.

e.g. *Этот тюремщикъ добръ душою.*

This gaoler is kindly in soul (has a kindly soul).

(7) The instrumental is used to denote *time in which* something happens; e.g. *зимою* in the winter, *весною* in the spring, *ночью* at night, *утромъ* in the morning.

(8) Many verbs, especially those denoting *using, governing, naming*, are followed by the instrumental. These can only be acquired by practice.

Such are :—

пользоваться to use

называться to be called

владѣть to govern

гордиться to boast of

жертвовать to sacrifice

править to guide

слыть to be reputed as

избираться to be elected

e.g. *Солдаты жертвуютъ жизнью за отчизну.*

Soldiers sacrifice their lives for their country.

Я горжусь своими родителями.

I boast of my parents.

Его назначили (избрали) опекуномъ.

They have appointed (chosen) him as guardian.

Онъ не владѣетъ своимъ роднымъ языкомъ.

He does not understand his own language.

VII. *The Locative.*

In modern Russian this case is never used except with the prepositions *при*, *въ*, *о*, *на*, *по*. Hence it is often called the prepositional.

§ 70. TABLE OF PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES.

Governing one case only:—

Object, * v. § 69, III.		Genitive.		Dative.		Instr.		Loc.		Verbal Prefixes.	
Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Adverbial.	Used with Nouns and Verbs only.	With Verbs only.	With Verbs only.	With Verbs only.
на	сверхъ	настъ	сверхъ	намъ	нъ	надъ	надъ	на	надъ	на	на
черезъ	—	по	вдоль	около	—	—	—	по	помѣ	по	по
—	изъ	въбѣсто	помѣн	—	—	—	—	изъ	предъ	изъ	изъ
—	изъ-за	внутри	помѣб	—	—	—	—	за	пра	изъ	изъ
—	изъ-подъ	внѣ	посѣ	—	—	—	—	изъ	про	изъ	изъ
—	отъ	вокругъ	райн	—	—	—	—	на	съ	на	на
—	у	возаѣ	сверхъ	—	—	—	—	на	на	на	на
—	—	длъ	противъ	—	—	—	—	на	—	на	на
—	—	кромѣ	среди	—	—	—	—	о	—	о	о
—	—	кругомъ	—	—	—	—	—	отъ	—	отъ	отъ
—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	по	—	по	по

TABLE OF PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES.

179

Those governing Objective and Instrumental :—

Governing Objective and Locative:—

Governing Objective, Dative, Locative:—					
HO		.		HO	
					HO

Governing Objective, Genitive, Instrumental :—

Governing Genitive and Instrumental :—	
C _{1a}	C _{1b}

N 2

* Ie accusative of inanimate objects : sensitive of animate, excepting the accusative sing. in -Y, -o of nouns in -i, -ia.

§ 70. TABLE OF PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES.

Governing one case only:—

Object, * v. § 69, III.		Genitive.		Dative.		Instr.		Loc.		Verbal Prefixes.	
Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Adverbial.	Simple.	Adverbial.	Used with Nouns and Verbs only.	Used with Verbs only.	With Verbs only.	
про	стволъ	безъ	одинъ	чено	къ	вонекъ	нахъ	при	въ	подъ	въз
чрезъ		до	възъ	объзъ					до	предъ	въз
		изъ	въвесто	поязъ					за	пра	пра
		изъ-за	внутри	пойзъ					изъ	про	про
		изъ-подъ	внѣ	посѣ					на	съ	пра
		отъ	вокругъ	райзъ					на	съ	пра
		у	возъ	сверкъ					на	съ	пра
				для	противъ				на	съ	пра
				протъ	среди				о	—	—
									отъ	—	—
									по	—	—

Those governing Objective and Instrumental :—

Prepositions never used as Verbal Prefixes.			
за			за
на			на
над			над
наде			наде

Governing Objective and Locative :—

Prepositions never used as Verbal Prefixes.			
въ			въ
вън			вън
вът			вът
вътре			вътре

Governing Objective, Dative, Locative :—

но			но

Governing Objective, Genitive, Instrumental :—

о			о

Governing Genitive and Instrumental :—

на			на

* I.e. accusative of inanimate objects ; genitive of animate, excepting the accusative sing. in -и, -и of nouns in -и, -и.

§ 71. THE PREPOSITIONS.

Preliminary.

I. In order further to assert the relationships of nouns and verbs, as in other languages the cases are not sufficient. They have to be more accurately and extensively defined by means of prepositions.

II. Prepositions and particles are either simple or adverbial, e.g. in English "by" and "beside."

III. Most simple prepositions are compounded with verbs; but *через* through, *къ* to, *безъ* without, cannot be thus used; nor are *воз-* up, *вы-* out, *пере-* again, *пре-* in excess, used except with verbs.

IV. Most prepositions govern only one case, some govern two, and some three.

V. The prepositions and the cases they govern are all stated in the Table § 70.

VI. Prepositions governing the objective take the accusative (or nominative) of inanimate things, and the genitive of living things [v. § 69, III.].

In a few instances only the older practice survives of a preposition taking the accusative with nouns denoting a living being; e.g. the idiomatic use of *въ* in *въ гости*, *въ няньки*, to be a guest, nurse, etc.

VII. Monosyllabic prepositions preceding monosyllabic nouns (including under this designation disyllabic nouns in liquids, e.g. *горо́дъ*, *бере́гъ* [v. § 5 (5)])

or dissyllabic nouns of the second declension often accent the preposition, especially in adverbial phrases.

e.g. **на полъ** on to the floor
на воду on to the water

In older Russian this rule was much more general.
 [v. § 80.]

§ 72. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE.

Three prepositions govern only the accusative: **черезъ** (or **чрезъ**), **про**, **сквозь**.

про means "for," "concerning."

e.g. **Всякъ про себѣ**, а Господь **про всѣхъ**.
 Each for himself, but the Lord for all.

Про кого говориши?
 Of whom are you speaking?

Combined with verbs it gives the idea of thoroughness.

e.g. **Прочитатъ** to read through.

сквозь right through.

e.g. **Гвоздь сквозь доску прошёлъ.**
 The nail has gone right through (pierced) the board.

Онъ пройдётъ невредимымъ сквозь огнь и воду.
 He will pass through fire and water unscathed.

Смотрѣть на что сквозь пальцы.
 To look through the finger (i.e. overlook).

Онъ прошёлъ сквозь огнь и воду и мѣдныя трубы.

He passed through fire, water, and brazen tubes [proverb: i.e. every danger] [or **чрезъ . . .**].

чέрезъ through and across.

e.g. Чéрезъ рéкú across the river.

Чéрезъ стеклó вíдно.

One can see [вíдно it is visible] through glass.

Чéрезъ негó мнóгие пострадáли.

Through him many have suffered.

Я у негó бýду чéрезъ недéлю.

I shall be with him in one week.

§ 73 (1). PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE GENITIVE ONLY.

These prepositions always govern the genitive; not merely the objective case.

безъ without.

e.g. Безъ дéнегъ without money.

Безъ надéжды without hope.

блíзъ* near.

e.g. Блíзъ гóрода near the town.

Блíзъ моегó мýжа стóйла Настáсья.

Nastássya was standing near my husband.

вдоль along.

e.g. Вдоль улицы along the street.

вмéсто† instead of.

e.g. Вмéсто весéлïя góре бýло.

It was woe instead of joy.

внутрí* inside.

e.g. Внутрí чéмодáна inside the portmanteau.

внé* outside.

e.g. Внé Еврóпы outside Europe.

* Whence adjectives бýжíй, вну́тренний, внíшний.

† Not to be confused with the adverb вмéстъ together; e.g. вмéстъ съ тобóю together with you.

вóзлѣ beside.

e.g. Вóзлѣ пéчи beside the stove.

вокrúгъ or кругóмъ round.

e.g. Вокrúгъ цéркви round the church.

для for the purpose of.

e.g. Для лéчéнíя for the purpose of being healed.

до defines the limit "up to which."

e.g. До стáрости дóжилъ.

He lived up to old age.

Читáй отъ начáла до концá.

Read from the beginning to the end.

Отъ Лóндона до Пáрижа.

From London to Paris.

До полúдня.

Until mid-day or before mid-day.

До Рождествá Христóва.

B.C., i.e. up to or before the birth of Christ.

До Царя Николáя Николáевича.

Before Tsar Nicholas Nikoláyevič.

Ихъ бýло до десятý.

There were up to (or about) ten of them.

до in compound verbs gives a sense of finishing;

e.g. дочитáть to read to the end.

изъ from, out of.

e.g. Изъ огнý out of the fire.

Изъ дрúжбы out of friendship.

изъ is scarcely ever used in measurements of time
(v. отъ).

изъ-за up out of.

e.g. Солнце вышло изъ-за лѣсу.

The sun rose out of the wood.

Изъ-за неї "Thanks to her . . ."

изъ-подъ from under.

e.g. Изъ-подъ меня взяли стулъ.

They took my chair from under me.

изъ in composition with verbs retains its original meaning.

Before heavy consonants it becomes изо; e.g. изождатъ to await.

Before soft vowels it retains the ъ; e.g. изъѣденный (моля) moth-eaten.

Before unvoiced consonants it is written and sounded ис; e.g. истратить to squander.

кромѣ besides.

e.g. Кромѣ такихъ примѣровъ.

Besides such examples.

Кромѣ лошадей онъ завёлъ ещё автомобиль.

Besides his horses he brought a motor.

Кромѣ торо in addition to this.

The "gerundive" or undeclined participle, исключая, is used absolutely to mean "except, excepting"; e.g. исключая англичанъ никакой народъ свободенъ excepting the English no nation is free.

мимо past an object.

e.g. Орёлъ летѣлъ мимо моего сада.

The eagle flew past my garden.

около about.

e.g. **Около дворá** round about the courtyard.

Около пятí часóвъ about five o'clock.

вокругъ signifies rather "encircling" all the way round.

e.g. **Вокругъ моегó дóма фруктóвый садъ.**

There is an orchard all round my house.

отъ out of, from.

e.g. **Отъ княжéнія Владíмíрова.**

From the time of Vladímir's reign.

Я получíлъ подáрокъ отъ ма́тери.

I received a present from my mother.

Я покраснѣлъ отъ стыда.

I blushed for shame.

отъ, as distinguished from изъ, indicates the source whence, rather than motion whence.

e.g. **Дорóга отъ Москvy до Петрогráда.**

The road from Moscow to Petrograd.

But **Онъ приéхалъ изъ Москvy.**

He arrived from Moscow.

отъ corresponds more with the Latin *ab*; изъ with *ex*.

When compounded with verbs, отъ, like изъ, retains its meaning, and changes to ото, отъ.

e.g. **Оторвáться** to tear oneself free.

Отъéхать to drive away.

Отъéздъ departure.

подлъ means the same as вóзлъ.

позадí behind.

e.g. **Позадí дерéвни** behind the village.

пóслѣ after (in time or order).

e.g. Пóслѣ ухóда оть дóлжности.

After retirement from service.

Пóслѣ короля вошóмъ егó слугá.

After the king his servant entered.

прóтивъ against or opposite to.

e.g. Прóтивъ дворцá стóять собóръ.

Opposite to the palace stands the cathedral.

Россíя бóрется прóтивъ Нéмцевъ.

Russia is fighting against the Germans.

ráди for the sake of.

e.g. Рáди твоéй мáтери.

For the sake of your mother.

сверхъ besides.

e.g. Сверхъ рáзума beyond reason.

Сверхъ жáлованья, получáеть нагráду.

In addition to a salary, he gets an emolument.

Сверхъ тогó furthermore.

средí or посредí in the middle of.

e.g. Посредí óстрова in the middle of the island.

Other adverbial phrases are also used with the genitive, but need not be noticed here.

у means "at," "by" (of place).

e.g. У дýмъ at work.

У ногъ когó at one's feet.

у with the verb есть replaces the verb "to have."

e.g. У менé есть хлéбъ. [v. § 87].

I have a loaf.

У себé ли бáринъ?

Is your master at home?

у with the personal pronouns, or proper names, has much the same force as the Latin *apud* or the French *chez*.

e.g. У Петróвыхъ всегдá хорóшíй обéдъ.

They dine well at the Petróvs.

In composition with verbs its use can hardly be profitably defined.

§ 73 (2). THE PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE DATIVE.

Of these there are only two.

къ can be used with some nouns to indicate approximate time.

e.g. Къ вéчеру toward evening.

Otherwise къ merely amplifies the ordinary meaning of the dative "to" or "for."

e.g. Къ бéрегу to the bank.

Пришлó книгу къ немý.

I will send the book to him.

къ is never combined with verbs. When used with nouns, the consonant к is merely sounded in front, like l' and d' in French : "l'âme," "d'autres." Before dentals and gutturals къ is softened to x in pronunciation ; e.g. къ тому is sounded xtomý ; къ дому, xlómu.

Before heavy initial consonants **къ** is sounded, and is sometimes written, **ко**.

e.g. **Ко двору** to the courtyard.

Similar rules apply to **въ** and **съ**, which may be written and sounded **во** and **со**.

Вопреки in spite of.

Вопреки его стараниямъ despite his endeavours.

§ 74. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE INSTRUMENTAL.

надъ means "above," "over."

e.g. **Надъ землёю** over the earth.

Братъ верхъ надъ кѣмъ (чѣмъ) to overcome someone.

Божья воля надо мною.

God's will over me.

Бѣда висѣтъ надъ его головою.

Sorrow hangs over his head.

мѣжду may be added to this paragraph, as it is only occasionally used with the genitive. It means "between."

e.g. **Сидѣть мѣжду двуихъ стульевъ — положеніе Румыніи.**

Sitting on the fence [between two chairs]—Roumania's situation.

Мѣжду двумя дерёвьями было окно.

There was a window between two trees.

It can also have a derived meaning, "among."

§ 75. PREPOSITIONS GOVERNING THE LOCATIVE.

One preposition, **при**, governs the locative and no other case. **при** originally meant "at."

e.g. **При домѣ** near, by the house.

При кѣмъ in the presence of.

При свидѣтеляхъ before witnesses.

При Николаѣ Александровичѣ.

In the reign (*or* time) of Nicholas Aleksándrovic̄.

Онъ при завѣдѣ.

He works in the factory.

Онъ былъ адютантомъ при Скоболевѣ.

He was adjutant to Skobolev.

Also causal—

e.g. **При богатствѣ возносимся.**

In prosperity we enhance ourselves.

The meaning of **при**, when compounded with verbs, is best learnt by practice; no rule can be conveniently stated.

§ 76. подъ, предъ, and за.

These govern the accusative and instrumental; the former when motion is implied, the latter when a state of rest is implied (cf. *in* in Latin or German).

I. **за** primarily means "behind," also "beyond."

With the accusative:—

e.g. **Бхать за границу.**

To travel beyond the frontier, i.e. abroad.

Миѣ давнѣ зѣ сорокъ лѣтъ:

I am long past forty years old.

За десять лѣтъ своей слѣжбы пріобрѣлъ большую
опытность.

In ten years' service he gained great experience.

Notice also:—

Мы садились за столъ.

We were sitting down at the table.

Also with verbs of "holding," "grasping."

e.g. Его взяли за руку.

They seized him by the hand.

Меня держали за плечи.

They held me by the shoulders.

In combination with что, за means "what a . . . !"

e.g. Что за шумъ! what a noise!

Also "for the sake of."

e.g. Мученики умерли за истину.

The martyrs died for truth.

Молись за отпá.

Pray for your father.

And "in price."

e.g. Продалъ книгу за четыре рубли.

I sold a book for four roubles.

With the instrumental:—

e.g. Этотъ господинъ живётъ за границею.

This gentleman lives abroad.

За садомъ behind the garden.

Я сидѣлъ за столомъ.

I sat at the table.

Or "giving the reason."

e.g. За **непріїздомъ** отца мы отложили нашу поездку.

On account of my father's non-arrival we postponed our excursion.

Зачѣмъ? why?

Also with verbs of "fetching."

e.g. Мені **послали** за сахаромъ.

They sent me to fetch the sugar.

за, in composition with verbs, expresses an incipient action [v. § 59, VI.], but sometimes a completed action, e.g. заснуть go to sleep, заплатить to pay up; in composition with nouns, expresses "at the back of," "behind"; e.g. **загородный** suburban (also **пригородъ** suburb).

II. подъ properly means "under"; with the accusative implying motion, with the instrumental static.

e.g. Я бросилъ его подъ столъ.

I threw him under the table.

Онъ лежитъ подъ пѣчью.

He is lying under the stove.

In regard to *time*.

e.g. Это случилось подъ вечеръ.

This happened in the evening (cf. Latin *sub vespera*).

Also in derivative senses.

e.g. Подъ этими условиями не могу подписаться.

Under these conditions I cannot give my signature.

III. предъ or пѣредъ means "before" (of place, and of time).

The accusative and instrumental similarly refer to motion or rest.

e.g. Я явился **п**ередъ судьб^ий.
I appeared before the judges.

П^ередъ воротами стоять два столб^а.
In front of the gates there stand two columns.

Предъ закономъ всѣ равны.
All are equal before the law.

Observe the adverbs **въ** перед^и in front, **въ** перёдъ forward, **на**-перед^и beforehand.

подъ and **предъ**, when compounded with verbs, conserve their meaning.

e.g. подниматъ	поднѣть	raise
подпира ^{ть}	подперѣть	prop up
представатъ	предстать	stand before
представлятъ	предст ^{ав} ить	to present

Like **отъ**, **подъ** and **предъ** keep the **ъ** before soft vowels, and **предъ** changes to **преду** before heavy consonants.

e.g. Предъявить to present.

Предусмотрѣть to foresee.

Подъѣдатъ to nibble, eat from below.

Предусмотрѣть всѣ мѣлочи.

To foresee all details.

Предъявить вѣк^сель къ взысканію.

To present a bill for payment.

Онъ подъѣхалъ на конѣ.

He came by on horseback.

§ 77. THE PREPOSITIONS **въ**, **о**, AND **на**.

These govern the accusative and locative; the accusative as usual relating to motion, the locative to a state of rest.

I. **въ** primarily means "in." It is sounded as a part of the following word, like **къ** and **съ**, and similarly may, if the following word have heavy initial consonants, be altered to **во**.

въ with the *accusative* is primarily "into."

e.g. (1) **Ивáнъ** вошёль **въ** кóмнату.

John went into the room.

Я ёзди́л **въ** Оренбúргъ.

I travelled to Orenbúrg.

(2) It is used in statements of time.

e.g. **Во** врё́мя путешéствiя **я** скучáлъ.

I was bored during the journey.

Въ пять лéтъ окончú мой трудъ.

In five years I shall finish my work.

Въ понедéльникъ on Monday.

(Distinguish по понедéльникамъ every Monday.)

Въ девять часóвъ at nine o'clock.

Трíжды **въ** день three times a day.

(Distinguish **въ** девятомъ часó in the ninth hour;
i.e. between eight and nine.)

(3) And in statements of price, measure, etc.

e.g. **Дорóга** **въ** восемнáдцать вёрстъ.

A road eighteen versts long.

(4) One idiomatic use with the accusative plural should be remarked, viz. :—

Мені звáли въ гóсти.

They invited me as a guest.

Онъ пошёлъ въ офицéры.

He has become an officer.

Постригúсь въ монáхи.

I shall take the tonsure as a monk.

In this idiomatic use the accusative, and not the genitive, is used as the objective case [v. § 71, VI.]

(5) Similarly :—

Сынъ въ отпá.

The son is like his father.

въ with the *locative* means (1) "in."

e.g. Бáринъ въ столóвой.

Master is in the dining-room.

(2) "in," in measurements of time.

e.g. Въ сентябрé мъсяцѣ in September.

Въ тысяча девятьсотъ пятнáдцатомъ году in 1915.*

(3) "in," in measurements of distance.

e.g. Мой дáча отсюда въ трёхъ верстáхъ.

My estate is three versts away.

(4) After certain verbs.

e.g. Кáяться въ грýхáхъ to repent one's sins.

Признáваться въ ошибкѣ to confess a mistake.

Обвинáть кого въ убийствѣ to convict of murder.

* In these phrases *году* cannot be omitted, and no other locative form is admissible.

In composition **въ** conserves its meaning.

e.g. **Входи́ть** to enter.

The original form **во** is kept in some accented adverbs; e.g. **всё** altogether. [v. § 80.]

With verbs commencing with a soft vowel **въ** is still hard and written **въ**.

e.g. **Въхатъ** (vyékhat') to drive in.

II. The preposition **на** primarily means "on."

With the accusative.

e.g. (1) **Я ходи́ль на пло́щадь.**

I went on to the square.

Па́ль тумáнъ на сырóу зéмлю.

A mist fell on the damp earth.

Я положи́лся на тебé.

I relied on you.

(2) In reference to time.

На четвёртый день on the fourth day.

Отпу́щу тебé на три часá.

I will let you go for three hours (**до трёхъ часá** until 3 o'clock).

(3) In reference to the effect produced.

Кушайте на здорóвье.

Eat for your health, i.e. may it do you good.

Я слéдовала́ емú на злó.*

I followed him to do him hurt.

* **Ог на злó.**

(4) "Against," "in respect of."

Я сердился на Григория.
I got angry with Gregory.
Не жалуйся на твоего брата.
Do not make complaints with respect to
(against) your brother.

With the locative.

e.g. (1) Ваша книга на столѣ.
Your book is on the table.

(2) In words denoting time.
На Рождество.
On Christmas day.

(3) In words indicating the points of the compass.
На северѣ in the North.

(a) Мой братъ женился на француженкѣ
племянница которой выйдѣть замужъ за
русскаго подданнаго.

My brother has married a Frenchwoman
whose niece is going to marry a Russian
subject.

(β) Играли въ карты.
They were playing cards.
Играли въ шахматы.
They were playing chess (i.e. a *game*).

But Играли на скрипкѣ.
They were playing the violin (the musical
instrument).

(γ) *Observe на Руси or въ Россіи in Russia.*

(Русь is a poetical form.)

In composition **на** has no meaning limited enough to be stated in these pages.

III. The preposition **о** (объ before vowels, óбó before very heavy initial consonants) primarily means "on" or "against."

With the accusative.

- (1) **Онъ удалился о камень** he hit against a stone
- (2) **Объ эту пору** at this time.

With the locative.

- (1) Concerning, about.

e.g. **Мы говорили о твоёмъ несчасти.**

We were speaking of your misfortune.

- (2) Of time (when the time is not exactly stated).

e.g. **О Пасхѣ** at Easter.

- (3) With numerals, when the objects enumerated are constituents of something else, and not accidental.

e.g. **Стуль о трёхъ ножкахъ** a chair with three feet.

(But **Стѣна въ три аршина** a wall 3 arsins high.)

In composition **о** indicates the completion of the act, and some generality.

e.g. **Обойти** to go round (and survey).

Оглянуться to glance round.

Before heavy consonants it can take the full form **обо**; e.g. **ободрать, обдирапть** to flay.

Before verbs beginning in soft vowels it is written and sounded **объ**.

e.g. **Объясни́ть** to explain.

Объ́тие, объёмъ, an embrace—the capacity, contents.

Before verbs beginning with **и**, **ъ + и** are fused into **ы**; e.g. **обыгра́ть** to beat at play, cf. **сыгра́ть** from **съ + игрáть** to play (a piece of music or at cards).

As a preposition **объ** is the correct form before words beginning with a vowel, and occasionally **обо** before words with heavy initial consonants.

§ 78. THE PREPOSITIONS **по** AND **съ**.

I. **по**, with the accusative, states the limit in space or time, or the purpose of the action.

e.g. **По кра́й си́нта** to the edge of the world.

Обнажи́й ру́ку по-локоть.

Bare your arm up to the elbow.

Мы пробу́демъ здѣсь по Пасху.

We shall stay here till Easter.

По си́е вре́мя я ничегó не слыха́мъ.

Up to now I have heard nothing.

По вѣ́къ свой (или по смѣ́рть) не забу́ду.

I will not forget (for all my life) up to my death.

Я шёль въ лѣсъ по ма́лину.

I went into the wood (to gather) raspberries.

Помы́л по воду.

Send for water.

Distributively, **по два, по три, по четыре** [v. § 62, I. and IV. (2)].

Notice—по тѣ сторону, по пра́вую (рѹку), по лѣ́вую, that side, to the right, to the left.

по with the dative indicates extensive space, in which something happens.

e.g. (1) По горамъ over the hills.

По го́роду through the town.

Плыть по морю to sail the seas.

Эта трава́ растётъ по овра́гамъ.

This herb grows in the ravines.

(2) Distributively—

По утрамъ every morning.

По пятн in fives (and with every number, except два, три, четыре). [v. § 62, IV.(2).]

По ночамъ every night.

По средамъ every Wednesday.

(3) "According to."

По-мбему* in my opinion.

По ста́рому in the old-fashioned way.

По чину according to rank.

Почему? why?

Потому что because.

по with the locative.

(1) With words of time, means "after."

e.g. Потомъ thereupon.†

По рожде́ству after Christmas.

По Петру́ Вели́кому after Peter the Great.

* In this single phrase моему is accented мбему. So, too, по твóему, своему. Thus:—

По моему проце́ссы вы́шли по-мбему.

My law-suit came off to my liking.

† Whence потомки, потомство descendants,

(2) "On account of."

e.g. Женá по мýжъ называéтсѧ.

A woman bears her husband's name.

По кóмъ вы въ траурѣ?

For whom are you in mourning?

по in composition confers a diminutive sense to the verb [v. § 59, VI.], e.g. поглядывать to glance here and there; or indicates the completion of the actions, e.g. побить to smite down, послать to send at last.

II. (1) съ with the accusative is used in general measurements of space and time.

e.g. Рублéй съ пято́къ издержалъ.

I spent about five roubles.

Тамъ я прóжилъ съ месяцъ.

I stayed there about a month.

Онъ рóстомъ съ отцá.

He is about as tall as his father.

Вёрстъ сó сто (съ сóтни) бýдетъ.

It will be about 100 versts away.

(2) съ with the genitive has the primal meaning "down from."

e.g. Онъ сошёлъ съ платформы.

He left the platform.

(изъ implies rather "away from," in space: e.g. поездъ двинулся изъ Москвы the train moved out of Moscow.)

Она сошла съ ума.

She has gone mad (literally, out of her mind).

Съ тéхъ поръ from that time.

Жду со дна вá день.

I waited from day to day

It may also have a causal meaning, like *отъ*.

e.g. *Съ тоскѣ* from, melancholy.

съ with the instrumental has an entirely different meaning, i.e. "with," "accompanying."

e.g. *Я приду съ супругою* (*супругой*).

I will arrive with my wife.

Онъ дѣялъ это съ радостью.

He was doing this with pleasure.

Онъ человѣкъ съ умомъ.

He is a man with sense.

Совсѣмъ quite.

Кто говорилъ съ Кузмой?

Who was speaking to Kuz'má?

In composition съ can have either the meaning "from" or "with," e.g. *снимать* to take away, *съѣздить* to travel away; or *соединять* to unite, *сочинять* to compose, *сдѣлать* to finish doing.

Before soft vowels съ is retained entire, e.g. *съѣдѣть* to devour; or, before и, amalgamates, e.g. *сыскать* to search (*съ-искать*); or remains as co, e.g. *соединять*.

§ 79. THE VERBAL PREFIXES *воз*, *вы*, *пере*, *пре*, *разъ*.

воз adds the sense of "up" to a verb.

Before unvoiced consonants it is written and sounded *вос*, e.g. *воспитать* to educate.

Before verbs beginning with с + a consonant it is, however, written *воз* and sounded *вос*, e.g. *возстание* insurrection.

In Old Slavonic the form was **възъ**, hence in modern Russian **вз** and **взо** are also met with.

e.g. **взлетѣть** to fly up
вздуть цѣны to inflate prices

Or before heavy consonants—

e.g. **вздиратъ**, but **вздрать** to tear up
взиратъ (for **вззираТЬ**), but **возрѣть** to look up
 (Cf. **сжечь**,* but **сожгутъ** to burn utterly.)

Before verbs beginning with soft vowels the **з** is pronounced and written hard.

e.g. **взъѣзжать** to drive up

As with other similar prepositions, **ъ + и** after is fused into **ы**.

e.g. **возъ + имѣть** becomes **возымѣть** to conceive
 (doubts, fears, etc.)

Similarly **раз-**, **разъ-**, **разы-**, **разо-**, **рас-**.

вы probably means “out,” and signifies the completion of an act.

e.g. **выѣ болѣть** to become utterly ill
выѣѣжжать (perfective) **выѣѣгдѣть** (imperfective)
 to run out [v. § 59, IV.]
выѣгнать drive out, **выѣгнѣть** (imperfective)

вы always takes the tonic accent except as stated in § 59, I. (3), II., and IV., when the imperfective is the

* Sounded **жжечь**.

iterative of the simple verb, in which the imperfective retains the original accent.

e.g. **вы́просить** to question, **вы́прашивать**
вы́гадать to guess, **вы́гадывать**

пere implies repetition, or change.

e.g. **переду́мать** to reconsider
перебо́ить to kill many, to massacre
перебыва́ть to be in many places
передопроси́ть to re-examine
перелáмывать to break to pieces
переписáть to copy
пересматрива́ть to review, survey; **пересмотръ**
revision

пре implies excellence, and is nearly the same as **предъ**; with adjectives it forms a superlative.

e.g. **прелюбéзный** very kindly
превыша́ть to surpass
прези́рать to despise

But it is often merely a bye-form of **пere**.

e.g. **превра́щать**, **преврати́ть** to transform

разъ has a motion of scattering or dissipation.

e.g. **растека́ть** to flow (in various directions)
разстанáливать to station people apart
разыгра́вать to play out to the end
разъездъ a departure (of many people in
different directions)
разувáть to take off one's shoes
разсéвáть to sow (scatter seed)
разсматрива́ть to survey all round

§ 80. THE ACCENTUATION OF PREPOSITIONS AND PARTICLES.

The general rule is that, as in other languages, prepositions are proclitics, i.e. atonic words pronounced with their noun, which is accented; e.g. "in-the-houſe," "on-the-table," "въ дому," "на столѣ." But in older Russian, and to a slight extent in modern Russian, certain of the simple prepositions—not the adverbial prepositions—when used with monosyllabic or disyllabic nouns, are accented, the noun becoming the *enclitic*.

e.g. *на́ бокъ* on the side

Further, when particles are used in compound verbs, in some cases the particle takes the accent, the verb becoming enclitic. This *only* applies—

- (1) to the prefix *вы* [v. § 79 and § 59, IV.];
- (2) to monosyllabic verbs [v. § 49 and § 52, (1) and (2)]

and generally only to the past participle passive.

e.g. <i>прожи́ть</i>	<i>прожи́тый</i>	to live through
<i>нача́ть</i>	<i>нача́тъ*</i>	to begin
<i>избрáть</i>	<i>избранъ</i>	to select
<i>нани́ть</i>	<i>нани́тъ</i>	and
	<i>нани́тъ</i>	to hire†
<i>называ́ть</i>	<i>названъ</i>	called
<i>подда́ть</i>	<i>подданый</i>	a subject (of a State)

This list contains some of the most important phrases in which the old accentuation of the preposition

* But past part. pass. *начатый*.

† So, too, *all* dissyllabic compounds of *-ятъ*.

survives. It will be observed the words are nearly all monosyllables, or dissyllables with liquids, such as бéрегъ shore [v. § 5 (5)], or dissyllabic feminines, and that the usage is practically confined to the accusative.

Verbs that accent the preposition are also monosyllabic.

The forms accenting the particle are mostly used in set phrases, like adverbs.

e.g. **нá бóкъ** (or **на бóкъ**) to one side

нá берегъ (or **на берегъ**) to the shore

нá голо (of weapons) naked

нá голову (or **на голову**) on to the head

нá душу (or **на душу**) into the mind

нá землю (or **на землю**) on to the earth

нá зло (or **на зло**) in despite

нá полъ on to the floor

нá поле (or **на поле**) on to the field

нá ночь for a night

нáсмéхъ (to hold up) to ridicule

вáчисто (to wipe) clean

So, too, in verbs.

e.g. **нáнялъ** I hired

зáнялъ (зáнять) busied

прéданный devoted

прóданный betrayed

íзбранъ selected

нáзванный called

Similarly with the *negative* **нe**: **нe дáлъ**,

нe браíлъ, нe быlo, нe пíлъ.

нáрелилъ (or **перелилъ**) overflowed

отдаíлъ (óddæl) he has given away

прóжилъ he has lived through

Other instances are:—

по лугу (по лу́гу) over the meadow
 по морю (по морю) over the sea
 по берегу (по берегу) along the bank
 вовсе at all
 из лесу out of the wood
 о землю (о землю) against the ground
 за ногу by the leg
 у моря (у моря) by the sea

No very general rule can be stated. In modern Russian the preposition is sometimes accented before simple monosyllabic or dissyllabic nouns, mostly when used with the accusative.

§ 81. THE NUMERALS.

Under this head it is proposed to enumerate some idiomatic uses of the numerals.

I. *The date* (число), *days* (дни), etc.

The days of the week (неделя) are:—

Понедельник	Monday (Неделя, Church Slavonic for Sunday)
Вторник	Tuesday
Среда	Wednesday (i.e. the middle)
Четвергъ	Thursday (i.e. the fourth day)*
Пятница	Friday (i.e. the fifth day)
Суббота	Saturday (i.e. the Sabbath)
Воскресенье	Sunday (literally "Resurrection")
Неделя	the week

* In ecclesiastical parlance, четвергъ.

The months (месяцъ) are :—

Январь	January	(январи, etc., accenting termination)
Февраль	February	(феврали, etc.)
Мартъ	March	(мáрта, etc.)
Апрель	April	(апрéля, etc.)
Май	May	(мáя, etc.)
Июнь	June	(иúня, etc.)
Июль	July	(иúля, etc.)
Августъ	August	(áвгуста, etc.)
Сентябрь	September	(сентябрá, etc.)
Октябрь	October	(октябрá, etc.)
Ноябрь	November	(ноябрá, etc.)
Декабрь	December	(декабрá, etc.)

The calendar of the Greek Church is still used in Russia, and is now thirteen days behind the Julian or Western calendar.

Instances are given of the use of these words, illustrating the rules.

e.g. Котóрое (какóе) числó у на́сь сего́дня ?

What is the date to-day ?

Шестьнáдцатое янва́ри.

The 16th of January.

Пятница двáдцать пáтого (пáтое) мáрта.

Friday the 25th of March.

Do not use capitals in designating the days and months.

When the year is mentioned, the year and number all go into the genitive, unless the day is named.

e.g. Средá (въ средú) тридцать пéрвое мáрта ты́сяча восемь-сóть сóрокъ восьмого гóда.

Wednesday the 31st March 1848.

But Девятнáдцатого февралí ты́сяча восемьсóть шестдесáть пéрваго гóда.

The 19th of February 1861.

These would be commonly abbreviated :—

e.g. Средá (въ средú) 31-ое мáрта 1848 г.
19-го февралí 1861 г.

Generally both dates are indicated.

e.g. 25/12 iii. 15.

II. *Age.* The following instances illustrate the rules :—

Скóлько Ивáшку (Ивáну) лéть ?

How old is Iváško ?

Какóй вóзрастъ Áнны Петróвны ?

How old is Ánna Petróvna ?

Ей шестдесáть лéть.

She is sixty years old.

Она́ родилáсь восемьмого мáя ты́сяча восемьсóть сóрокъ второго гóда.

She was born on the 8th May 1842

Ему́ идётъ двáдцать пéрвый годъ

He is in his twenty-first year.

Ми́нъ тридцать лéть отроду.

I am thirty years old.

Ему́ бóльше двадцати-восьмí лéть

He is over twenty-eight.

Ему́ ужé зá сорокъ лéть.

He is over forty.

III. In forming compound nouns and adjectives in which the first element is a numeral, the rule is to use the genitive of the numeral, e.g. *двухъ-этажный* two-storeyed; *двугривенникъ** twenty copecks; *трёхъ-головый* three-headed; *четырёхъ-сторонний* the 400th; *двадцатилетний* twenty years old; *пятиугольникъ* pentagon, etc.; except *тысячелѣтие* millennium, and compounds with *сто*, such as *столѣтие* century.

IV. *The time of day.*

The Russian for hour is *часъ*; for a watch or clock *часы* (plural).

The following sentences give the rules:—

Кото́рый тепе́рь часъ на ва́шихъ часахъ?

What time is it by your watch?

Сколько тепе́рь вре́мени? What is the time now?

Сколько про́било? What time was it that struck?

Тепе́рь два часа́. It is now two o'clock.

Сейча́сь шесть часо́въ. It is now six o'clock.

Сейча́сь не бо́льше семи часо́въ.

It is not more than seven o'clock.

Сейча́сь однá мину́та пя́таго.

It is one minute past four.

Сейча́сь че́тверть пя́таго. It is a quarter past four.

Сейча́сь полови́на пя́таго. It is half past four.

Сейча́сь тридцать дёвять трéтьяго.

It is 39 minutes past two.

Сейча́сь три че́тверти трéтьяго.

It is a quarter to three.

* *дву* Old Russian for *двухъ*.

Сейчáсь безъ чéтверти дéвять.

It is a quarter to nine.

Сейчáсь полови́на оди́ннадцатого.

It is half past ten.

Сейчáсь безъ десяти́ (мину́ты) двéнадцать.

It is ten minutes to twelve.

Онъ у́ехалъ въ сóрокъ девятý по слъ четырёхъ.

He went away at 4.49.

V. *Fractions.*

There is little to add under this head, but the student must specially note the compounds with **пóль**, **пóлу**, a half. **пóль** as a regular noun signifies sex or half.*

e.g. **мужской пóль** the male sex
пополáмъ by halves

(1) When the compound signifies half of a whole, the nominative has **пóл-** with the substantive in the genitive; the other cases are declined regularly with the prefix **пóлу-**.

e.g. **пóлчасá** half an hour, **пóлчаса**, **пóлчасу**, etc.
пóлверсты half a verst, **пóлверсты**, **пóлверстъ**

Thus, too, **пóлдень** mid-day, **пóлночь** midnight; **пóлдня**, **пóлночи**, etc.

After the preposition **по**, the locative of **пóлдень** is **пóлдни** (a relic of the time when **день** was a feminine like **кость**); e.g. **нéсколько мину́тъ по пóлдни** a few minutes after noon.

Thus, too, **пóлторá** [v. § 62, IV. (8)].

* Distinguish **пóль** floor, and **пóлá** skirt.

It is most important to distinguish **пoлднí, полнóчи,** half a day, half a night, which signify duration, not a point of time.

In these words *only* the first element is declined, the second already being in the genitive.

e.g. Я бóдрствовалъ **пoлднí, полнóчи, полчасá**, etc.

I sat up half a day, half a night, half an hour, etc.

In older Russian, as in German, there were other compounds with **пoлy-**, for $2\frac{1}{2}$, $3\frac{1}{2}$, etc., viz. **пoлтреты́нгo**, $2\frac{1}{2}$, etc.

These are obsolete. Modern Russian, like English, says **два съ полови́ной**, etc. [v. § 62, IV. (8).]

e.g. Пóслѣ **пoлуминуты** э́той рабо́ты онá устáла.

After half a minute of this work she was tired.

In this connection the word **сúтки, сúтокъ**, may be noticed, meaning the whole day, i.e. 24 hours, including **день** day and **ночь** night.

(2) Where "half" is used loosely, and not in terms of strict measurement.

These are compounds prefixed with **пoлy-** invariable.

e.g. **пoлубстрóвъ** a peninsula

пoлумéсяцъ a crescent moon

пoлутóмъ a half-volume

(but **пoлгóма, полутóма** half of a volume)

пoлу-официáльный semi-official, etc.

VI. *Russian money.*

The unit is the **рубль** (рублí) or **цѣлковый**, worth about two shillings. [v. § 4 (9).]

The divisions are as follows:—

90	copeks	девяносто копѣекъ	ог дѣвять грывенъ
80	"	восемьдесят	" " восемь "
70	"	сѣмьдесят	" " сѣмь "
60	"	шѣстьдесят	" " шѣсть "
50	"	пятьдесят	" " полтіна ог полтінникъ
40	"	сороکъ	" " четыре грывенника
30	"	тридцать	" " три "
25	"	двадцать пять	" " четвертакъ
20	"	двадцать	" " двугрыденный
15	"	пятнадцать	" " пяті-алтынныи
10	"	дѣсять	" " грывенникъ
5	"	пять	" " пятачекъ
3	"	три копѣйки	" алтынъ*
2	"	две	" " грошъ
1	"	копѣйка	
$\frac{1}{2}$	"	полкопѣйка	" дѣнежка
$\frac{1}{4}$	"	чѣтверть копѣйки	" полушка

VII. *Frequencies.*

Besides **однажды**, etc., there are some other locutions that should be noticed.

(1) In the multiplication table **единожды** is used instead of **однажды**, and **четырежды** is retained for this purpose. From five onwards the instrumental of the numeral is used, but is accented **пятью**, **шестью**, **восемью**, **дѣвятью**, **одиннадцатью**, etc., and *not* on the ultimate, as usual.

* Obsolete.

(2) Before comparatives the forms used are **вдвое**, **втрóе**, **вчéтверо**, **впíтеро** . . . **въ дéсятеро**; and thence-forward **въ оди́ннадцать разъ**, etc.

e.g. **Москá по прострáнству въ двáдцать сéмь разъ**
больше Сéрпухова.

Moscow in extent is twenty-one times bigger
than Sérvpukhov.

VIII. A note should be added that one cardinal has become obsolete, namely **тыма** or **тма** 10,000 (except in some phrases, and as an expression for a multitude). There is a derivative, **тéмникъ** a commander of 10,000, and **тматмúщий**, "multitudinous."

IX. *Cards.*

The names of the suits and the cards (карты, feminine) may be useful to the student.

The four suits (масть, feminine, third declension) are: hearts **чéрви** (чérvéй, feminine, third declension); diamonds **бúбны** (búbony, feminine); spades **пíки** (píkы, feminine), and **трéфы** (tréfы, feminine) clubs. Trumps are **кóзырь** (mas.); a game without trumps **игrá** въ без-кóзыряхъ. A trick is **взýтка**, **взýточка**; **игróкъ** the player.

The cards in each suit are:—

тузъ ace	шестёрка six	валéТЬ knave
двóйка deuce	семёрка seven	дáма queen
трóйка three	осмёрка eight	король king
четвёрка four	девятка nine	
пятёрка five	десятка ten	

e.g. **король** чéрвéй; **пятёрка** бубóнъ; **трóйка** пíкъ; **девятка** трéфъ.

Notice the phrases: **игráть**, **сыгráть** (perfective) въ карты; **проигráть** to lose; **выигráть** to win (imperfectives **прóигрывать**, **выигрывать**).

§ 82. THE PRONOUNS.

I. *The Interrogative Pronouns.*

These are used as in English, *кто* referring to persons, like "who"; *что* to inanimate objects and neutrals like "what," and *который* corresponding to "which."

Note, however, that in English the genitive precedes the noun by which it is governed; in Russian it follows. [v. § 69, IV. (3).]

e.g. John's house. *Домъ Ивáна.*

Thus: *Въ домъ котораго мужикá ты вошёлъ?*

Into which peasant's house did you go?

II. *The Relative Pronouns.*

As in English, the interrogative and relative are now identical in form.

кто is used when the subject is a person, or in correlative and indefinite sentences, answering to *тотъ*, *всíкій*, *всѣ*.

e.g. *Томъ, кто лжётъ, не вѣрятъ.*

A liar is not believed.

Всѣ, кто прибыли, изумились.

All who arrived were astounded.

что is similarly used, when the generality is not personal.

e.g. *Всё что ты сказалъ—дурáчество.*

All you have said is folly.

Otherwise, for nouns *котóрый* is used ; and, as always in Russian, the genitive follows and never precedes.

e.g. *Опáсности, котóрымъ я подвергáлся.*

The dangers I have risked.

Домъ, крýша котóраго снесенá вѣтромъ.

The house the roof of which has been carried off by the wind.

какóй may be substituted, where the sense allows ; it means "such as."

Observe.—The relative is *never* omitted as in English. But in common parlance *что* in the nominative tends to replace *кто* and *котóрый* for all numbers and genders. This is not an admitted literary use.

e.g. *Это тóтъ сáмый нýшчíй, что приходíлъ къ вамъ утромъ.*

This is the same beggar as visited you in the morning.

III. *The Indefinite Pronouns.*

These are of two kinds ; first, *кто* and *что*, etc., unaccented (cf. in Greek *τις*, *τι*, contrasted with *τις*, *τι'*), and next, compounded pronouns with *то*, *ни*, and other particles. [v. § 85 on negative sentences.]

e.g. *Всё что ни есть.**

Anything whatsoever.

Скóлько ни рабóтали.

However much they worked.

* *ни* as compared with *не* is like the Latin *nē*, Greek *μή*, e.g. *πᾶν δι, τι δινή* or *μηδέ* whatever it may [not] be.

Кѣмъ бы ты ни родился, ты всѣаки обязанъ повиноваться закону.

Whatever you were born, you must obey the law.

Кто-нибудь.

Whoever it may be.

Кто-нибудь пусть принесётъ мнѣ стаканъ воды.

Let somebody bring me a glass of water.

(быть imperative of быть; v. § 57, II. and 41, VI.)

The distinction between *какой-то...* and *какой ни* is almost identical with the English “some” and “any”: someone (but I don’t know who exactly); anyone (and there is no discrimination nor knowledge of any individual).

IV. *The Reciprocal Pronouns.*

To express “each other,” “one another,” there are two phrases: *другъ друга*, *одинъ другой*. *другъ друга* is used for *all* genders and numbers. The latter part of the phrase is varied, to be in agreement with the verb or sentence.

e.g. *Они ненавидѣли другъ друга.*

They hated each other.

Они спорили другъ съ другомъ.

They quarrelled with each other.

другъ другу (from *дружка*, feminine) is popularly also in use.

But with regard to *things*, the usual phrase is **одинъ** **другой**, both of which are declined in full.

e.g. **Волны сходились и разбегались борясь одна съ друго́й.**

The waves met and parted, fighting one another.

V. *The Negative Pronouns* [v. § 85 and § 41, VII.].

In Russian, negatives are doubled, but do not cancel each other.* There is no means of expressing in Russian "I did *not* see nobody."

e.g. **Никако́й пе́ было причи́ны къ егó ухóду.**
There was no reason.

All negative pronouns are resolved when governed by a preposition. [v. § 41, VII.]

e.g. **Ни къ како́му изъ вышеука́занныхъ примѣровъ это не подхóдитъ.**

This does not comply with any of the previous examples.

The only apparent exception is when the second negative negates a different verb or a noun or adjective.

e.g. **Я не считаю егó неучтывымъ.**

I do not consider him impolite.

Никто не мóжетъ не узнатъ егó милосéрдия.

No one can not-recognise (fail to recognise) his clemency.

* E.g. in Greek *οὐδεὶς οὐκ ἀφῆται* no one has come, but *οὐκ ἔπειθεν οὐδὲν* could mean, as in English, "he did not experience nothing, but..."

§ 83. THE RUSSIAN APPELLATIVES.

Under this head a few notes will be found, as to the Russian methods of speaking to others, writing to others, and addressing letters.

I. *Conversation.*

Intimate friends and relatives use the pronoun *ты*; the politer form is *вы*. The Russian for "tutoyer," "dutzen," is *тыкать*.

вы takes a predicative adjective in the plural.

e.g. *вы очень любезны* you are very kind (*unlike the French "vous êtes très aimable"*)

But a noun following is in the singular, as in French, e.g. *вы мой лучший другъ* you are my best friend.

Servants when speaking *of* their masters use the 3rd person plural.

e.g. *Дома-ли баринъ (или барышна)?*

Is your master (mistress) at home?

Онъ ушлъ.

He (she) has gone out.

Russians in addressing one another use not the family name, but the Christian name and patronymic.

Russians have three names: the Christian name, the patronymic, i.e. the father's name, and the family name.

e.g. *Левъ Николаевичъ Толстой.*

The "patronymic" ends in **-овичъ** (-евичъ) or **-овъ** (-евъ) (for the lower classes) in the masculine,* and **-овна** (-евна) and **-ова** (-ева) in the feminine.

The Christian name is called **імя**, the patronymic **отчество**, the family name **фамилія**.

e.g. **Какъ зовутъ васъ по імені, отчеству, фамилії?**

Какъ ваše імя, (ваše) отчество, (ваша) фамилія?

In ordinary narration and conversation all classes are designated by the name and patronymic.

e.g. **При Николаѣ Александровичѣ.**

In the reign of Nicholas II.

Вчера я встрѣтилъ Марью Алексѣевну.

Equivalent to "yesterday I met Mary," or
"yesterday I met Mrs. or Miss . . ."

The Russian equivalents for Mr., Mrs., Monsieur, Madame, are **господинъ** (plural **господы**), and **госпожа**. The use of them is very much more restricted than in other European languages.

Господинъ, **госпожа**, are only employed when the relationship is distant. Thus, the master of a factory would address his equal (whose name we will suppose to be **Василій Павловичъ Перепѣлкинъ**) as **Василій**

* The patronymic is accented like the name from which it is derived; where monosyllabic names throw the accent on to terminations, or the termination can be accented, the accent is similarly thrown forward in the derivative. E.g. **Фома, Фомичъ; Кузьма, Кузьмичъ; Савва, Саввичъ; Пётръ (Петръ), Петровичъ; Александъръ (Александра), Александровичъ.** A few feminines are formed in **-ична**, e.g. **Фоминиш(ч)на, Саввиш(ч)на, Кузьминиш(ч)на; Лука, Лукиниш(ч)на; Никита, Никитиш(ч)на.**

Пáвловичъ; an underling (such as a clerk) as Господи́нъ Перепéлкинъ; a mere workman or lower servant as Васи́лий. He would not address him as Перепéлкинъ, unless he were a superior giving a direct command to an inferior; e.g. the master speaking to a foreman.

Again, if a doctor is introduced, he will commonly be addressed as дóкторъ (as we say "colonel" or "lieutenant" or "doctor"), unless he is of higher standing, when the polite form would be господи́нъ дóкторъ.

When comparative strangers address one another, they will say господи́нъ Бáшкинъ; as they approach intimacy, they will use the form Илья́ Кузьмичъ; and as close friends, Илья́; but seldom Бáшкинъ, as in other languages, the surname.

II. *Between masters and servants.*

The servant speaks of his master and mistress, and their daughter, respectively as бáринъ, бáрыня, бáрышия.

In shops, restaurants, etc., an attendant calls the customers or masters сúдарь, судáрыня (an abbreviation of госудáрь, госудáрыня), or adds an enclitic съ; these phrases are equivalent to the English "sir" and "madam."

e.g. Слúшаю-сь. I hear you, sir.

Да-сь. Yes, sir.

Что прика́жете-сь? What are your orders, sir?

This съ is supposed to be an abbreviation of сúдарь.

The master and mistress (*patron* and *patronne*) of a business house are хозяинъ, хозяева.

III. At meetings the company is collectively addressed as **Милостивыя госуда́рьши и милостивые* госуда́ри**, or more simply as **господá**, equivalent to "Ladies and Gentlemen."

IV. *Titles.*

Majesty is **Величество**. The monarch is called **госудáрь** (**госудáрьши**), and these words are written with a capital, unless the reference is historical to a deceased monarch.

e.g. Его Имперáторское Величество Госудáрь.

Её Имперáторство Величество Госудáрьши.

Царь, царíца, are used in ordinary speech.

The Royal family has the title **Высочество**.

e.g. Его Имперáторское Высочество Наследникъ.

Цесарéвичъ Алексéй Николáевичъ.

His Imperial Highness the heir Tsesarévič
Alexis.

Otherwise the forms are царéвичъ, царéвна.

Grand Dukes (who belong to the Royal Family more distantly) are styled **Великий Князь**.

e.g. Его Имперáторское Высочество Великий Князь
Николáй Николáевичъ.

Её Имперáторское Высочество Великая Княгиня
Елизавéта Николáевна.

The daughters of a князь are styled **княжна**.

* A rendering of the German "gnädige Herrschaften."

Dukes (князы) have the title си́тельство (brilliance).

e.g. Его Си́тельство Князь Пáвелъ Петróвичъ Долго-
рúкíй.

Earls and barons are also styled си́тельство.

e.g. Его Си́тельство Графъ (графиня) . . .

The civil ranks are as follows:—

Его Высокопревосходи́тельство (excellency), for a
Дъ́йствительный Тайный Совѣтникъ (something
like a Privy Councillor; also called Статсъкій
Генералъ).

Его Превосходи́тельство, for a Тайный Совѣтникъ.

Его Высокорóдие, for a Статсъкій Совѣтникъ.

Его Высокоблагорóдие, for a Коллéжскій Секретарь,
and for the lower ranks.

Его Благорóдие.

In the army, ranks from a пору́чикъ (lieutenant) to
a штабъ-капитáнъ (captain) are styled Его Благорóдие;
from a капитáнъ to полкóвникъ, Его Высоко-благорóдие;
from a general of infantry to a general-lieutenant,
Его Превосходи́тельство.

In the Church, the regular clergy are styled Высоко-
преподóбие, преподóбие, высокопреосвяще́нство, преосвя-
ще́нство, according to rank; the lower orders being
called благословéніе.

Persons not titled are addressed господинъ, госпожá,
followed by the full name; often the господинъ,
госпожá, is omitted on envelopes.

As stated in § 67, Russian concord follows sense and not form, unlike French and German.

e.g. Егó Превосходитељство изволили прибыть.

His Excellency has arrived (deigned to arrive)

Ея Императоурское Величество Государыня говорила что . . .

Her Imperial Majesty the Empress said . . .

Contrast—“*Sa Majesté le roi est arrivée.*” “*Que désire-t-elle?*” In Russian, что хотите.

These titles must be used in combination with the name of the office.

e.g. Егó Высокопревосходитељству Господину Министру Народнаго Просвѣщенија (Путей сообщеній).

To his Excellency the Minister of Public Education (communications).

In a private letter—

Егó Высокопревосходитељству Аркадию Михайловичу Разину.

To his Excellency Arkádi Mihailovič Rázin.

V. In addressing letters the full titles are inserted, in the dative, with or without *къ*.

e.g. In a private letter, Егó Превосходитељству (ог Высокопревосходитељству) Николаю Семёновичу Пугачёву.

If official, Егó Высокопревосходитељству Господину Начальнику Либáво-Рóменской жељезнной дорóги, Николаю Семёновичу Пугачёву.

To his Excellency the director of the Libáva-Rómeny railway. . . .

Where there is no title, any of these three forms are applicable:—

Его Высокородию Николаю Петровичу господину Пивоварову.

Николаю Петровичу Пивоварову.

Or simply, Николаю Петровичу господину Пивоварову.

Next follows the name of the street and number, then the house, lastly the town and country.

e.g. Его Сиятельству Князю Семёну Аркадьевичу
Долгорукому,
Мещовая улица, №. 18,
домъ Башкина,
въ Москвѣ.

Letters addressed abroad are marked: за границу, beyond the frontier.

The letter is usually headed with some honorific adjective.

e.g. When very formal, Милостивая Государыня,
Госпожа Шахматова; when less stiff, Милостивая
Марья Ефимовна; if friendly, Многоуважаемая
Марья Ефимовна; if intimate, Дорогая or
Любезная Марья Ефимовна.

Thus the English equivalent of Многоуважаемая
Марья Ефимовна, would in this case be "Dear Mrs. or
Miss Шахматов."

The conclusion of the letter would be as follows:—

Съ совершеннымъ почтениемъ.

Готовый къ услугамъ.

(or, informally) Вашъ

Василий Пивоваровъ.

§ 84. INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES.

As in English, sentences beginning with interrogative pronouns and adverbs are interrogative in themselves.

e.g. *Когдá прибúдете?*

When will you arrive?

Other interrogative sentences are distinguished by the enclitic particle *ли*, which is appended to the emphatic word of the sentence. The personal pronoun, or subject, may or may not follow the verb.

e.g. *Не смóжете-ли вы завтра приготóвить моí сапогí?*
Will you not be able to get my boots ready to-morrow?

Скóро-ли прибúдемъ къ бéрегу?
Shall we soon reach shore?

There is another interrogative adverb, *рáзвéй*, which conveys an ironic sense.

e.g. *Рáзвéй нúжно чтобы нась подслúшивали?*
Is it necessary they should overhear us?

§ 85. NEGATIVE SENTENCES.

Russian has two particles of negation, *не* and *ни*. A third one, *нéть*, is considered to be an abbreviation of *не есть*, and is used for "No" as a reply.

ни is used:—

(1) To express neither—nor—.

e.g. *Ни я ни мой отéць не могí скрыть такúю тревóгу.*
Neither I nor my father could conceal such a trouble.

ни ни always requires the verb negated with *не*.

(2) In composition with negative pronouns [v. § 40 (1), § 41, VII. and § 82, V.]. Such pronouns, e.g. **никако́й**, also need a verb negated with **не**.

(3) With the indefinite pronouns [v. § 82, III.].

не is used :—

(1) To express the negation of a verb in all tenses and moods.

e.g. **Не трóгай менá, когда я шью.**

Do not touch me, when I am sewing.

(2) With adjectives to negative their meaning. Notice in this connection that Russian possesses no such distinction of negatives as English or Latin; e.g. between non-essential, unessential, illogical, non-logical, insensate, nonsensical (the distinction generally being that an adjective negated with “un-” or “in-” implies the absence of the positive qualities; whereas the non-compound excludes the compatibility of that quality with some other object).

Such a distinction must be otherwise expressed.

e.g. Your statement is unreasonable.

Твоё объяснение неразумно.

Caterpillars are irrational, non-rational beings.

Гусеницы—это безразумные существа.

Неопределённые задачи indefinite, undefined tasks.

Безпределные пространства infinite—endless—horizons.

Observe (as stated in § 41, VII.) that in Russian a double negative asseverates, and does not annul as in English.

e.g. **Я не встрéчалъ никого** I met no one.

An apparent exception exists, when the negatives belong to separate verbs or as stated above.

e.g. **Это было встрѣчено, какъ нѣчто такоѣ, что должно было случиться, что не могло не случиться.**

This was faced as something that must have come about, that could not not have come about (have failed of coming about).

(3) **не**, in combination with certain pronouns, forms negative pronouns.*

The pronouns are **кто**, **что**, **когда**, **куда**, etc. (i.e. those on the first line § 40 (2)).

In this usage **не** stands for **нѣтъ** there is not.

e.g. **Нѣчего дѣлать.**

There is nothing to do.

(but **Я не дѣлалъничего.**

I was doing nothing.)

Мнѣ нѣ къ кому обратиться.

I have no one to turn to.

Ему нѣ на чѣмъ основывать егѡ надѣжды.

He has nothing on which to build up hopes.

*The preposition is always inserted between the negative and the pronoun, as with **никто**, etc.*

Observe, in the past or future tense the verb "to be" must be inserted.

e.g. **Нѣчего будѣть (было) дѣлать.**

Lastly, the reader is cautioned to distinguish between this use of **не**, as a separable negative, and **нѣ** the indefinite prefix; e.g. **нѣкто** somebody, **нѣкоторый**, etc. [v. § 40 (2).]

* This use of **не**, formerly **нѣ**, is probably derived from **не** e there is not; e in older Slavonic being an unaccented form of **есть**.

§ 86. THE VERB "TO BE."

In the present tense the verb "to be" is generally omitted. In any case the forms *есмъ*, *еси*, *есмы*, *есте*, are obsolete, and *суть* is only rarely found; *есть*, when necessary, replacing all the persons and numbers.

e.g. Я здоровъ I am well.

Ты негодій you are a scapegrace.

Оні воры they are thieves.

Барина нѣтъ дома master is not at home.

However, the "copula" in the present sometimes must be stated.

(1) Есть regularly stands for "there is," "there are."

e.g. Есть на свѣтѣ худыя люди.

There are evil people in the world.

The negative of есть in this sense is нѣтъ. [v. § 85.]

(2) Есть and суть sometimes are used to assert existence.

e.g. Богъ есть: ангелы суть.

God is: the angels are.

But it is better to use the verb существовать.

e.g. Всегда существуютъ нѣсколько исключений для всякихъ правилъ грамматики.

There are always some exceptions to every rule of grammar.

(3) In definitions.

e.g. Пряма́я лінія есть кратчайшее разстоя́ние между двумя точками.

A straight line is the shortest distance between two points.

Болѣзни суть наказаніе человѣку за первородный грѣхъ.

Diseases are man's punishment for primeval sin.

But, in all such cases it is better to substitute the pronoun это.

e.g. Лінія — это...

Болѣзни — это наказаніе...

(4) When the use of the copula is essential to clarity бытъ is generally replaced by some exacter verb, such as сидѣть, находиться, лежать, стоять, состоять.

e.g. Мой дядя находитъся въ плохомъ состояніи здоровія.
My uncle is in poor health.

Москвѣ стоять на рѣкѣ тогоже названія.

Moscow lies (is) on a river of the same name.

Прага стоять на холмѣ надъ рѣкою Влтавою.*
Prague is on a hill above the Moldau.

Кошка сидѣть на стулѣ.

The cat is on the chair.

Собака лежитъ подъ столомъ.

The dog is under the table.

Стулъ стоять въ дѣтской.

The chair is in the nursery.

Онъ состоить офицеромъ въ арміи.

He is an officer on service.

The omission in Russian of the present of бытъ explains the form of the past tense. In older Russian the perfect ran я есмъ (на)писаъ, -а, -о, ты еси (на)писаъ, -а, -о, etc.; later the copula vanished. Cf. in Polish pisalem, pisalam, pisalom; pisalem, pisalem, pisaloś, etc.; pisaliśmy, pisaliśmy, etc.

* Of Moldau.

In every other tense and mood the verb быть is used, but the predicate put into the dative or instrumental, according to sense.

e.g. Онъ былъ банкиромъ (present онъ банкиръ)
а теперъ онъ торговецъ селёдками.

He was a banker and is now selling herrings.

Нашество Татаръ было несчастьемъ для Руси.
The incursion of the Tatars was a misfortune
to Russia.

Когда́ быва́ете (будете) до́ма ?

When are you at home as a rule ?

When will you be at home ?

It should, however, be observed that in the present the word *вотъ* is used like the French *voici*, *voilà*, or the Italian *ecco*.

e.g. Вотъ вашъ братъ кото́рый опозда́лъ.
There is your brother who was late.

§ 87. THE VERB "TO HAVE."

In Russian there is no verb which can be exactly translated "to have."

The verb "to have" is replaced by *у менé есть*,
былъ, etc.

e.g. У менé [есть] (было ог были) три грамматики
рúсского языка.

I have (had) three grammars of the Russian
language,

иметь “to possess” or “own” is also used in this sense.

e.g. Съ кемъ имѣю честь говорить?

With whom have I the honour of speaking?

Otherwise, иметь means “to own”; cf. имущество property.

e.g. У меня есть собственный домъ.

I have a house of my own.

But Имѣю собственный домъ.

I have (i.e. own as my property) a house belonging to me.

§ 88. SPECIAL USES OF THE INFINITIVE.

The infinitive has a special idiomatic use as a sort of general fatalistic future; the construction is impersonal, the logical subject and the predicate both being put in the dative.

e.g. Имъ не забыть свойхъ дѣтей.

They shall not forget their children.

Такимъ образомъ никому не быть богату.

In this fashion no one gets rich. [v. § 34 (1).]

Ну, хорошо что ты ко мнѣ зашёлъ; а то не бывать тебе живому.

It is well for you you came to me; otherwise you would not be alive.

Observe the dative adjective may be in the simple or attributive form; the instrumental is also allowable; thus in the instance above, такимъ образомъ . . . богатымъ.

The infinitive *may* be used as a noun, as in English.

e.g. To fly on an aeroplane is a great pleasure.

Летѣть на аэропланѣ—это большоѣ удовольствіе.*

* Observe aviator is лётчикъ.

But the verbal noun in *-nie* is generally substituted in the nominative, and always in the oblique cases.

e.g. To suffer is our truest experience.

Страда́ние — наше сáмое истинное испытáние.

By trying you will succeed.

Старáниемъ тебъ уда́стся.

§ 89. THE USE OF GERUNDIVES AND PARTICIPLES.

I. *The Gerundives.*

The two gerundives, present and past, can only refer to the subject* of the sentence, and are used as indeclinable participles.

e.g. Бродя́ по улицé, я встрéтилъ Ивáна Яков-
левича.

Whilst wandering along the street I met
Iván Yákovlevič.

Читая́ А́нну Ка́рёнину, я плáкала.

On reading Ánne Karénina, I cried.

Заплативъ свой долгý, я почúвствовала себé
свободною.

Having paid my debts I felt free.

II. *The participles, present and past.*

These are used in agreement with a noun.

e.g. Въ кóмнатé было тихо, только шелестъми
переворáчивае́мы листы.

It was quiet in the room, only the leaves (of
the book) rustled as they were turned over
(present participle passive).

* The historical explanation of this rule is that the "gerundives" are the shorter (predicative) form of the nom. sing. masculine of the active participles.

Пéредъ егó расширенными глазами проходили
страшные образы, вызывающие жалость . . .
Before his *open* eyes terrifying images passed,
provoking pity . . .

Въ тёмную ночь онъ летѣли куда-то на своихъ
ключихъ крыльяхъ.
In the dark of night they flew somewhere on
their *sharp-pointed* wings.

Всё это было проявленія одной загадочной
силы, желающей погубить человѣка.
All of these were aspects of some one
mysterious power *that wants* to ruin man-
kind.

Я видалъ её сидѣщей на стулѣ.
I saw her *sitting* in a chair.

Онъ походилъ на человѣка теряющаго послѣ-
нюю надѣжду и оставившаго все въ прош-
ломъ.

He resembled a man *who was losing* his last
hope, and *had left* everything behind in the
past.

Каждый годъ русская железнодорожная
промышленность уменьшаетъ количество
ввозимыхъ изъ Германии товаровъ.

Every year the Russian iron industry
diminishes the quantity of goods imported
from Germany.

It should also be observed that the present participle
passive, especially when compounded with *не*, has a
secondary meaning, corresponding to the Latin *-bilis*.

e.g. видимый visible, движимый moveable
сгораемый incendiable, нелюбимый unlovable

Abstracts from these are formed in -ость, etc.

неотъемлемость imprescriptibility
неотмываемость irrevocability

The past participle passive *may* also bear this same secondary meaning, e.g. несравненный incomparable.

As a general rule these gerundives and participles are used much like the English forms in “-ing.”

§ 90. SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

I. *Temporal.*

There being no moods in the Russian verb, temporal conjunctions merely govern the same forms as are used in principal clauses.

There are some few independent forms, such as когда when, пока until; most of the conjunctions are compounds with что; cf. in French *quand*, but *quoique*, *bienque*, *lorsque*, etc., all formed with *que*.

когда means “when” generally; пока is followed by “*не*,” as in French.

e.g. Пока Новиковъ не уѣзжалъ изъ Москви.

Until Nóvikov left Moscow, “jusqu'à ce que Novikov ne quittât Moscou.”

But temporal conjunctions are mostly formed with the appropriate preposition governing a case of *тотъ*, *то*,

followed by *какъ* or *что*; e.g. *между тѣмъ какъ* while, *въ тόмъ что* exactly when, *по тόмъ что*, *послѣ тогó какъ* after, *до тогó какъ* until, *отъ тогó что* after which . . .

II. *Causal conjunctions, etc.*

These are all formed prepositionally; e.g. *потому что* because, *для тогó чтобы* with the object of, *кромѣ тогó что* besides which, *послѣ тогó какъ* after (causal), *противъ тогó, что* against the fact that . . ., etc., very much like the German “*wogegen*,” “*indem*,” “*nachdem*,” etc.

III. *Conditional clauses.*

The clause prefaced by “if” is called the protasis, the principal sentence is called the apodosis.

The regular method is to prefix the protasis with *если*, in common parlance *коля*.

When the past tense are used the particle *бы** may be added to the protasis, and must be added to the apodosis. *бы* is enclitic and can be abbreviated to *бъ*, e.g. *еслибъ*.

The apodosis is also frequently prefaced by the particle *то*, which stands first in the sentence, like the German “*wenn . . .*” “*so.*” This *то*, like *so*, is left untranslated in English.

* *Бы* in modern Russian is a particle creating the sense of a conditional tense (“I would have,” “should be,” etc.). It is originally the 2nd and 3rd person sing. preterite of *быть* (formerly *я быхъ, ты, онъ бы*). In Old Russian the compound tense *быхъ былъ* was a regular conditional like *j'aurais été, j'eusse été*.

The tense sequence is as in English.

e.g. **Если** вась посѣшѹ, то приведѹ мою сестру.

If I visit you, I will bring my sister.

Если-бы случи́лась така́я бѣдá, то я уведоми́ль-
бы вась объ э́томъ.

If such a misfortune happened to me, I would
acquaint you of it.

When the events stated in protasis and apodosis are
both unreal, **бы** is repeated in both.

e.g. **Если-бы** я простуди́лся, я не мόгъ бы окончить
свою кни́гу.

If I had caught cold, I should not have been
able to finish my book.

The infinitive may be used in either clause as
stated in § 88.

e.g. **Если** бы мнѣ звáть.

If I had known.

Если идти́ направо.

If we are to go to the right,

The protasis may be *irregularly* introduced :—

(1) By two disjointed verbs.

e.g. Разбогатѣю, заплачѹ; не разбогатѣю, не заплачѹ.

If I grow rich, I will pay; if I don't, I shan't.

(2) By the imperative uninflected for any person
[v. § 91].

e.g. Знай я э́то рáньше, я бы не написа́ль.

Had I known this sooner, I would not have
written.

(3) By the infinitive [cf. § 88].

e.g. *Знать бы мнѣ это раньше, я бы не осмѣялся говорить.*

Had I known this sooner, I would not have dared speak.

In all these cases бы marks unreality, an unfulfilled condition. Cf. § 93 on *было*.

IV. *Final clauses.*

Final clauses relate either to purpose or effect.

(1) Purpose.

Where the subjects of the principal and the subordinate clause are the same, чтобы (sometimes *дабы*) is used with the infinitive.

e.g. *Я путешествовалъ по Россій чтобы учиться русскому языку.*

I travelled about in Russia to learn Russian.
[v. § 69, V.]

Where the subjects are different, чтобы (or *дабы*) generally with the past tense.

e.g. *Я уѣду изъ Москвы чтобы ты осталась одна.*
I will leave Moscow that you may be left alone.

(2) Effect—"so that," *такъ что*, with the present, past or future.

e.g. *Орёлъ летѣлъ такъ быстро что нельзѣ было попасть въ него.*

The eagle flew so fast that there was no chance of hitting him.

Она такъ раздражительна, что я не выдержу.
She is so irritable that I shall not stand it.

V. *Reported Speech.*

In English reported speech goes into the tense of the principal verb, with the necessary change of person.

e.g. "He said that he was going to visit his cousin if time permitted." The remark in direct narration would be "I am going to visit my cousin, if time permits."

The same rule does not altogether apply to Russian. Russian has only one past tense, so that there is no difference corresponding to "I *have* seen," "I said I *had* seen." Further, there is no reported future tense, "was going to visit," "would visit." Consequently the above sentence in Russian would run: "Онъ сказа́л что посвѣтить своего двоюроднаго брата́ е́сли у него́ буде́тъ вре́мѧ" (present tense in reported speech).

Or again, "He said he had seen the Tsar." His remark was "I *have* seen the Tsar"; however, in Russian, "I saw," "have seen," and "had seen" are all alike, *увидѣ́лъ*. Consequently the Russian would be: "Онъ сказа́л что ви́дѣ́лъ Царя́."

Lastly, in reporting the present tense, Russian, like English, sometimes may change to the past.

e.g. He said he was writing a letter to his mother
(I am writing . . .).

Онъ сказа́л что писа́лъ письмо́ къ ма́тери, *or better* что пишетъ.

Consequently, in reporting an action with a verb in the past, Russian does not, because it cannot, change the tense.

In reporting a speech with a future tense Russian must use the future, as it has no indirect form of expressing the future.

In reporting a speech with a verb in the present, Russian can retain the present, changing the person, *or* may use the past tense.

In reporting an imperative, the imperative must be treated like a future.

e.g. They said they would murder Cæsar (i.e. Let us murder Cæsar).

Они сказали что убьётъ Цезаря (сказали, да убёмы *or* убёмте Цезаря).

In reporting a question, the same changes of person and tense must be used, but the particle **ли** is affixed to the first word of the subordinate clause, unless some other interrogative word be there instead. [v. § 84.]

e.g. He asked Peter would his (Peter's) sister be going out as a nurse.

He asked Peter when his sister had lost her money.

He asked Peter whether his sister was ailing.

In direct speech—

Will your sister be going out as a nurse ?

When did your sister lose her money ?

Is your sister ailing ?

In Russian—

Онъ спросилъ Петра, пойдётъ-ли егo сестра въ яицы. [v. § 69, III.]

Онъ спросилъ Петра, когда егo сестра потеряла ей деньги.

Онъ спросилъ Петра, не болна-ли егo сестра.

In all these cases the only change is in the person, none in the tense.

Similarly—

He said “could one believe a German.”

Онъ сказа́лъ, “ра́згъ мо́жно ве́рить Нéмцу.”

These are the usual methods of reporting speech in Russian. A few idiomatic usages must still be discussed. Three particles, *де*, *моль* and *дескать* (or *дискать*), and in vulgar Russian, *грю*, *гришь*, *грить*, *грили* (abbreviations of *говорю*), are used like the vulgar English, “'e sez,” to indicate a reported speech; *де*, *моль*, *дескать* are all three abbreviations of words bearing the same meaning, “he said”; * and are all popular in style.

These particles are used in reporting messages (where in Latin and Greek the accusative and infinitive would be employed).

e.g. Онъ говори́ть: я моль искáлъ, да знать моль и́бту.

He says, “I looked, but could not find out.”

Объ ита́льянской а́рмии отзы́вался съ прези́-
тельной улы́бкой, какъ о величинѣ да́же
серъёзного внимáния не заслúживающей;
мы-де её хоро́шо знае́мъ. [v. § 4 (7).]

He disparaged the Italian army with a contemptuous smile, as though speaking of a power not deserving serious attention;
“we know all about it.”

Вы ду́мали запугáть менé, Васíлій Ивáновичъ;
вóтъ дескать, я его́ пугнú.

You thought you would frighten me, Vasili Ivánovič; you thought, “I will frighten him.”

* These examples are partly taken from Boyer's *Manuel de la langue russe*.

In every case where these particles are used, the quotation or indirect narration is in the person and tense of the original; these words merely serve as spoken inverted commas.

§ 91. THE IMPERATIVE.

The imperative conjugated in full comprises the following forms:—

e.g. да игрáю	пусть игрáю	let me play
игráй		play
да игрáеть	пусть игрáеть	let him play
да игрáемъ	пусть игрáемъ, игрáемте	let us play
игráйте		play
да игрáютъ	пусть игрáютъ	let them play

The forms with *да* express desire; those with *пусть* permission.

The original imperative has only two forms, *игráй*, *игráйте*, and in Old Russian *игráй* was the correct form of both the 2nd and the 3rd person singular.

The form in *и*, *и*, *й*, *ь* (e.g. *сóхни*, *держí*, *дѣлай*, *сядь*) is used for all numbers and persons in phrases which have no imperative meaning.

(1) Adverbially.

e.g. пожáлуйста	please (sta suffix)
пожáлуй*	I consent, so be it
чай*	(чáть expect) so be it
пусть ог	пускáй so be it
кажи́сь	apparently
глядí	apparently
небóсь	(for небóйсь do not fear) apparently
подí	(for пойдí from пойдти) apparently
почти	almost

* Probably these are abbreviated forms of *пожáлую*, *чáю*.

дай with the perfect future “if I only could.”

e.g. **Воть дай** унесу мъшо́къ огурцо́въ, продáмъ.

If I can carry off this sack of cucumbers, I
will sell it.

давай with the infinitive.

e.g. **Давай** игрáть. Let us play.

The answer may be **давай!** Let us! = Yes, please; willingly.

(2) As a preterite.* The form is invariable, and expresses a sudden action.

e.g. **Отку́да ни возьмíсь** from out of the clouds.
(Literally, from wherever it came.)

Съ гóрь да съ тоскí... я возьмí да всё ей
разскажí.

What with pity and grief I told her every-
thing.

Чегó-жъ бы я въ дóмъ не зналъ? Кажíсь, всё
знаю.

What do I not know of at home? I think I
know everything.

Постáвила на столъ напítки и закуски разные,
и поутрú ранéхонько бúдить и давай рас-
прашивáть.

She set various foods and drinks on the
table; wakes up in the morning, and began
asking [literally “and let me ask!”].

So, too, **глядь** he looked up,—lo! **хвать** he seized;
дёрни, e.g. **дёрни** меня the idea occurred to me;
угорáди, e.g. **угорáди** меня the idea occurred to me.

* This usage is in accord with the older grammar, which had a 3rd person singular preterite in this form.

(3) As a conditional, v. § 90, III. (2).

(4) One past tense, *попёль*, is used as an imperative, equivalent to "get out." The explanation is that the older language had the full form *будь пошёль* (*будь* imperative of *быть*).

e.g. *Пошли вонъ, дурачки!*
Out you go, you fools!

§ 92. FURTHER ILLUSTRATIONS OF THE ASPECTS.

Russian has two future forms, perfective and imperfective.

e.g. *Въ бўдущемъ году бўду заниматься химией.*
Next year I shall study chemistry.
Завтра займусь музыкой.
To-morrow I shall be busy with my music.

Remember бўду and стану can never be used with a perfective infinitive.

The perfective implies definition of object, and completion of purpose; the imperfective the duration or method of the process.

Instances:—

Летомъ онъ ходилъ въ пальто (imperfective).
In the summer he walked about in an overcoat.
(French "paletot"; indeclinable in Russian.)

Онъ нерѣдко хаживалъ въ отцовскій домъ.
He often went to his father's house.
(The iterative, expressing discontinuous frequent action.)

Тотъ, который прохаживается около этого дома отъ десяти часовъ до полудня называется Никитинымъ.

The man who saunters round this house from 10 to 12 a.m. is called Nikitin.

Онъ шёлъ въ Москву he was going to Moscow.

Онъ пошёлъ на вокзалъ.

He went to the railway station (perfective and definitive).

Я видалъ виды на своёмъ вѣкѣ!

I have seen wonderful things in my life! (imperfective; general).

Я увидѣлъ Анну на башнѣ.

I caught a sight of Anne on the tower (perfective).

Я увидѣлъ въ гостиницѣ одного знакомаго.

I saw an acquaintance in the hotel.

(I.e. I just saw him for an instant; perfective.)

Тамъ-же видѣлъ много иностранцевъ.

I also saw many foreigners there.

(There is no definiteness in the action.)

It has repeatedly been stated that the "aspects" are best understood as devices for supplementing the defective tense-system, there being in modern Russian no inflections save for the present tense. The following table illustrates this adaptation of the "aspects."

Very few verbs, if any, possess all the aspects; few possess as many as шептать or вытирать. The iterative is in such cases expressed by the present form, and the perfective signifies both the aoristic and a completed action in the past.

A few verbs have an "abstract" and "concrete" aspect; for these, v. §§ 59, I. (4) and 59, II. and III.

SCHEME OF A RUSSIAN VERB WITH FULL ASPECTS

ARRANGED AS TENSES AND MOODS.

Present.

	To tear asunder.	To whisper.
Infinitive :	выдира́ть	шептать
Verbal noun :	выдира́ние	шептáніе
Part. indecl. act. :	выдира́я	шепчá
Part. decl. active :	выдираю́щíй	шéпчу́щíй
Part. passive :	выдирае́мый	шéпчeмый
Indicative :	выдираю́, -eши, -ють	шепчу́, шéпчутъ
Imperative :	выдира́й	шепчíй

Imperfect.

Indicative :	выдира́ль	шептáль
Part. indecl. act. :	выдира́въ, -áвши	шептáвъ, -áвши
Part. decl. active :	выдира́вшíй	шептáвшíй

Imperfect iterative.

Indicative :	Same as	шёптывалъ
Part. indecl. act. :	Imperfect	шёптывавъ, -авши
Part. decl. active :	throughout,	шёптывавшíй

Тотъ, кото́рый прохáжива́ется о́коло э́того дóма
отъ десяти часóвъ до полúдня назы́ва́ется
Ники́тинымъ.

The man who saunters round this house from
10 to 12 a.m. is called Nikítin.

Онъ шéль въ Москвú he was going to Moscow.

Онъ пошéль на вокзálъ.

He went to the railway station (perfective
and definitive).

Я видáль вíды на своёмъ вéкú !
I have seen wonderful things in my life !
(imperfective; general).

Я увидáль Анну на бáшнé.
I caught a sight of Anne on the tower (per-
fective).

Я увáдáль въ гостинницѣ одногó знакомаго.
I saw an acquaintance in the hotel.
(I.e. I just saw him for an instant; perfective.)

Тáмъ-же вíдáль мнóго инострáнцевъ.
I also saw many foreigners there.
(There is no definiteness in the action.)

It has repeatedly been stated that the “aspects” are best understood as devices for supplementing the defective tense-system, there being in modern Russian no inflections save for the present tense. The following table illustrates this adaptation of the “aspects.”

Very few verbs, if any, possess all the aspects; few possess as many as шептáть or выдиráть. The iterative is in such cases expressed by the present form, and the perfective signifies both the aoristic and a completed action in the past.

A few verbs have an “abstract” and “concrete” aspect; for these, v. §§ 59, I. (4) and 59, II. and III.

SCHEME OF A RUSSIAN VERB WITH FULL ASPECTS
 ARRANGED AS TENSES AND MOODS.

Present.

	To tear asunder.	To whisper.
Infinitive :	выдирать	шептать
Verbal noun :	выдирание	шептанье
Part. indecl. act. :	выдирáя	шепчá
Part. decl. active :	выдирающíй	шéпчу́щий
Part. passive :	выдираемый	шéпчемый
Indicative :	выдирáю, -ешь, -ють	шепчу́, шéпчутъ
Imperative :	выдирáй	шепчай

Imperfect.

Indicative :	выдирáлъ	шептáлъ
Part. indecl. act. :	выдирáвъ, -áвши	шептáвъ, -áвши
Part. decl. active :	выдирáвшíй	шептáвшíй

Imperfect iterative.

Indicative :	Same as	шёптывалъ
Part. indecl. act. :	Imperfect	шёптывавъ, -авши
Part. decl. active :	throughout,	шёптывавшíй

Perfect active.

Infinitive :	вы́драть	To tear asunder.	To whisper.
Verbal noun :	вы́драніе*		Same as
Part. indeclin. :	вы́дравъ, -авши		Aorist
Part. declinable:	вы́дравши		throughout.
Indicative :	вы́дralъ		
Imperative :	вы́дри		

Perfect.

Part. passive :	вы́драннýй вы́дираннýй	шёптаннýй
-----------------	---------------------------	-----------

Aorist.

Infinitive :	вы́дернуть	шепнуть
Verbal noun :	вы́дернутъ*	шепнутіе*
Part. indecl. :	вы́дернувъ, -увши	шепнувъ, -увши
Part. declinable:	вы́дернувшій	шепнувшій
Part. passive :	вы́дернутый	шепнутый
Imperative :	вы́дерни	шепни

Future.

Continuous :	бýду вы́дирать	бýду шептать
Iterative :	” ”	бýду шёптывать*
Perfective :	вы́дру, -ёшь, -утъ	Same as Aoristic.
Aoristic :	вы́дерну, -ешь, -угъ	шепнý, -ёшь, -утъ

Conditionals can be formed from any *past* tense by adding the particle *бы*.

* Seldom used.

§ 93. AUXILIARY PARTICLES.

The Russian verb has only one past tense, and one present. It has been explained how the aspects supplement the tense system, the imperfective supplying an imperfect tense [v. § 42 (2) (i) and (ii), § 59, § 90, III., and § 92]; the perfective a past tense of completion, whether preterite perfect or pluperfect, and a determinate future; the iterative a tense to express frequency of action; and the abstract aspect the power as contrasted with the act. Further, the particle *бы* partially replaces the subjunctive mood.

There are other particles and auxiliaries used, e.g. *пусть*, *да*, *дай*, *давай* [v. § 91], principally with the imperative; and the use of some others, e.g. *давно*, *было*, *бывало*, *стáну*, *бýду*, *будто*, *только*, *что*, is important.

(1) *давно* (*дáвный* in the past) or *ужé* (already) is used to express the pluperfect.

e.g. *Онъ давно искалъ дóчку.*

He had long been searching for his daughter
(imperfective).

Ты ужé приготóвилъ обéдъ.

You had prepared dinner (perfective).

(2) *бýду*, as. has been seen [§ 92], expresses the imperfective future [also v. § 58].

(3) *стáну* also expresses the imperfective future, but has a remoter meaning, like the English "I am going to . . ." or the French "je vais . . ."

e.g. *Стáну собирáть мой вéщи въ чемодáнь.*

I am going to pack my things in the
portmanteau.

(4) **бúдто** or **какъ бúдто** means "as though."

e.g. **Онъ всталъ какъ бúдто чтобы уходить.**
He got up as though he were going out.

Онъ улыбнúлся какъ бúдто егó братъ пошутылъ.
He smiled as though his brother had made a
joke

(5) **только что** means "just."

e.g. **Онъ только что похоронилъ своего отца какъ**
померла и мать.

He had just buried his father, when his
mother died.

(6) **бывáло** with the past tense adds a meaning of
"he used to do," of a continuous practice.

e.g. **Я бывáло посéщáлъ эту семью.**
I used to visit this family.

(7) **хотя** (or **хоть**) is used for "though"; in combination with **бы** and a past tense, **бъ** when the sense imports unreality.

e.g. **Хотя ты былъ худенький, надо было постараться.**
Though you were ill, you should have tried.

Хотя я бúду въ Москвѣ, по мнѣ нельзя бúдетъ
повидать вашихъ родителей.

Though I shall be at Moscow, I shall not be
able to see your parents.

Хотя-бъ я былъ самымъ сильнейшимъ на свѣтѣ,
бѣдныхъ я-бъ не угнеталъ.

Even if I were the most powerful man on
earth, I would not oppress the poor.

(8) *было* with the imperfective or perfective past signifies that the action contemplated, in the clause into which *было* is inserted, was never completed: as something—in the following sentence—intervened.

e.g. *Я* *дышалъ* *было* *приготовлёнія* *чтобы* *пригласить*
васъ *къ* *себѣ* *въ* *гости*, *когда* *менѣ* *вызвали*
изъ *Лондона*.

I was getting ready to ask you to a party, but
 was summoned away from London.

Я *дочиталъ* *ваше* *сочиненіе* *и* *уложилъ* *было*
для *почты*, *когда* *непріятели* *сожгли* *мой* *домъ*.

I had finished reading your composition, and
 had packed it up to post, but the enemy
 burned my house.

(9) The future perfect (I shall have ...) cannot be expressed in Russian by any one corresponding tense.

e.g. *Когда* *я* *буду* *вполнѣ* *удовлетворёнъ*, *мені* *уже*
не *будеть* *у* *живыхъ*.

When I shall have been satisfied completely,
 I shall no longer be alive.

Я *побѣгу* *домой* *и* *буду* *назадъ*, *прѣждѣ* *чѣмъ*
ты *встанешь*.

I shall have run home and back, before you
 even get up.

§ 94. THE IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTION.

I. Many verbs are in themselves impersonal; e.g. *кажется* it seems, *оказывается* it transpires.*

* *Казаться* to seem, *оказать* to render, *сказать* tell, *приказать* order,
рассказать narrate, *указать* indicate, *показать* show, *отказать* dismiss,
refuse; all of them perfective, the imperfectives being *оказывать*, etc

Such verbs are used only in the 3rd person singular, as in Latin or Greek without *any* pronoun.

II. There is no one word for generality like "one," "man," "on"; either the 2nd person singular, or the 3rd person plural is used.

e.g. Говорить one says.

Чемъ болѣе стараешься, темъ болѣе ошибаешься.

The more one tries, the more mistakes one makes.

III. Russian has a predilection for impersonal construction in the passive with *ся* [v. § 60], the agent or subject being put into the dative.

e.g. хочу I wish, or мнѣ хочется; видѣть I saw, мнѣ видѣлось; спать to sleep, мнѣ спалось хорошо I slept soundly; думают I think, мнѣ думается I think; жить to live, въ Англіи свободно поживаются life is free in England.

As a rule the reflexive passive construction imports a remoteness or generality to the sentence, whereas the active records a precise and determinate fact.

§ 95. APOCOPATED FORMS OF SOME VERBS.

A few verbs signifying a brusque action or noise have an *invariable* form for the past tense.*

E.g. the interjections *ахъ!* *охъ!* *ухъ!* *эхъ!* are sometimes used like parts of a verb, meaning "to cry out" *ахъ*, *эхъ*, etc.

* In many cases very similar to the apocopated past of imperfективes in *-нуть* [v. § 50, II.], and the imperative preterites [v. § 91].

So, too, the past of inchoatives in **-нуть**; e.g. **прыгъ** jumped, **стукъ** knocked, and similarly **бухъ** bump.

e.g. **Бухъ — пόплыли въ водахъ глубокихъ.**
 Plump — they swam in the deep waters.
Оні подошлі къ дому и стукъ въ окно.
 They approached the house and rat-ta-tap-tap on the window.
Лиса пустилась къ лѣсу и юркъ въ нору.
 The fox started for the wood, and dashed into a hole.

§ 96. THE REFLEXIVE VERBS.

Under this head a few special phrases may be discussed. It has already been stated [§ 60] what the distinction is between passives and reflexives.

e.g. **Этой войной разрушились всѣ ходячія литературные представленія.**
 In this war all the current literary notions were destroyed.
Уничтожали самихъ себѣ оба противника (ог уничтожили, perfective).
 Both combatants annihilated themselves.

Where an action is done for someone at his orders French uses the exact phrase “faire . . .”; English leaves it to be understood; the Russian usage will be illustrated by the example.

e.g. The workmen built a house.
 L'ouvrier bâtit une maison.
 Рабочий построилъ домъ.
But I have built a country-house.
 Je me suis fait bâtir une maison de campagne.
 Я построилъ себѣ усадьбу.

Женá обу́лась.

The woman has put her shoes on,

Elle s'est chaussée, or elle s'est fait chausser.

Я побре́юсь.

I will shave [myself] or be shaved.

Я бре́юсь самъ.

I shave myself.

Many verbs are reflexive in Russian, where they would not be so in English.

In the first place the reflexive indicates that the object is identical with the subject.

e.g. мы́ться to wash (oneself), обувáться to put on shoes, etc., одѣвáться to dress (oneself), etc.

In the second place [v. § 60] it indicates the passive (as in French).

e.g. Сви́рѣпости продолжáются.

Les barbaries se continuent (are being continued).

Я лиши́лся ма́тери.

I have lost my father.

Онъ лиши́лся жи́зни.

He has died.

Онъ лиши́ль себѣ жи́зни.

He has committed suicide.

In the third place many verbs are naturally reflexive or deponent.

e.g. гордíться чѣмъ to boast
бо́яться чегó to fear

Fourthly, many verbs with the reflexive import what was in Greek the middle voice, i.e. an action directed to the purpose of or affecting the subject of the verb, though the object governed be not the subject of the sentence.

e.g. **Онъ стучитъ въ дверь.**

He is knocking at the door.

Онъ стучитъся въ дверь.

He is knocking at the door (with some expectation concerning himself).

Волосы старца (ор у старца) бѣльются.

An old man's hair goes white.

Снѣжныя вершины горъ бѣльются въ отдаленіи.
The snow-peaks of the mountain are whitening in the distance.

Слышать to hear.

Слышаться obey.

Мухи кусаютъ.

Flies sting [bite].

Моя кѣшка кусается.

My cat bites (as her habit).

Признавать to acknowledge.

Признаваться to admit, confess.

Я призналъ егo правымъ.

I acknowledged him to be right.

Я признался, что я не былъ совсѣмъ безвѣйнымъ.

I confessed I was not altogether guiltless.

§ 97. RUSSIAN RELATIONSHIPS.

In the matter of words descriptive of relationships, Russian has an extraordinary abundance of special words.

Kinship is родство.

Degrees of relationship стéпени родства :—

General terms общія назвáнія.

прéдокъ	прéдки	ancestors
потóмки		descendants
рóдственникъ		kinsman
рóдственница		kinswoman
родъ (róда)		family (genealogically)
семъ́ (фамíлія)		a family

Special designations особыя назвáнія :—

Lineal descent поколéвіе исходяще.

сынъ	son	поколéвія по прямой линий generations in children
дочь	daughter	
дѣти		
внукъ	grandson	
виу́чка	granddaughter	
внучата	grandchildren [v. § 26 (5)]	
правнукъ, etc.	great grandson	

Lineal ascent поколéвіе восходяще.

отéцъ*	father
мать	mother
родíтели	parents
дѣдъ	grandfather
бáбушка (бáбка)	grandmother
пра́дѣдъ	great grandfather
пра́бабушка	great grandmother
прапра́дѣдъ, etc.	great great grandfather
пра́щуръ	great great great grandfather

* Бáтюшка in familiar speech.

Collateral relations *побочное родство*.

брать *	brother
сестра	sister
дядя	uncle
тётя, тётка	aunt
† <i>стры́й</i>	uncle, paternal
† <i>стры́я</i>	aunt, paternal
† <i>уй</i>	uncle, maternal
† <i>уйка</i>	aunt, maternal
† <i>у́ецъ, у́ичичъ, -ечка.</i>	first cousin on father's side
† <i>стры́ичичъ, -ечка</i>	first cousin, maternal side
племя́нникъ, -ица	nephew, niece
братáничъ, † -ица	nephew, niece, by brother
сестричъ, † -ица	nephew, niece, by sister
двою́родный братъ (сестра)	first cousin §
трою́родный братъ	second cousin, and so on
двою́родный племя́н- никъ	first cousin once removed in second generation downwards

Similarly—

трою́родная бáушка	great aunt
трою́родный д́дъ	great uncle

These words for relationship are, however, seldom used beyond the third generation; in ordinary language a third cousin would be *рóдственникъ въ четвёромъ колънъ*, a kinsman in the fourth generation.

* Used colloquially to express friendly connection.

† All of these are obsolete or nearly so.

‡ Disused now.

§ I.e. a brother in the second generation.

Relations by marriage родство по бра́ку (свойство*).

	<i>From the husband's side.</i>	<i>From the wife's side.</i>
Father-in-law	тесь	свёкорь
Mother-in-law	тёща	свекровь
Brother-in-law	шуринъ <i>от</i> зять [v. § 24 (2)]	дёверь
Sister-in-law	свойчница, <i>от</i> свесть, <i>от</i> невестка	золовка
Son-in-law	зять	зять
Daughter-in-law	сноха <i>от</i> невестка	сноха <i>от</i> невестка
Sister-in-law's husband	свойкъ	золовкинъ мужъ
Wife of brother-in-law	жтровъ†	жтровъ†

I.e. my sister's husband is зять; my brother's wife невестка; but my wife's sister is свесть *or* свойчница, and her husband свойкъ; my husband's sister золовка. In English "brother-in-law," "sister-in-law," leave all these relationships indeterminable.

Other terms to be noted are:—

бтчимъ	step-father
мáчеха	step-mother
пáсынокъ	step-son
пáдчерица	step-daughter
свóдный братъ	step-brother
свóдная сестра	step-sister

* But свойство property.

† Obsolete.

крёстный отецъ	godfather
крёстная мать	godmother
крёстникъ (крёстный сынъ)	godson
крёстница (крёстная дочь)	goddaughter
невѣста	bride
женихъ	bridegroom
женатый	married (of a man)
замужняя	married (of a woman)
брачъ	marriage
свадьба	wedding

Note.—мужъ женится на жену, *but* женá выйдётъ замужъ на кого.

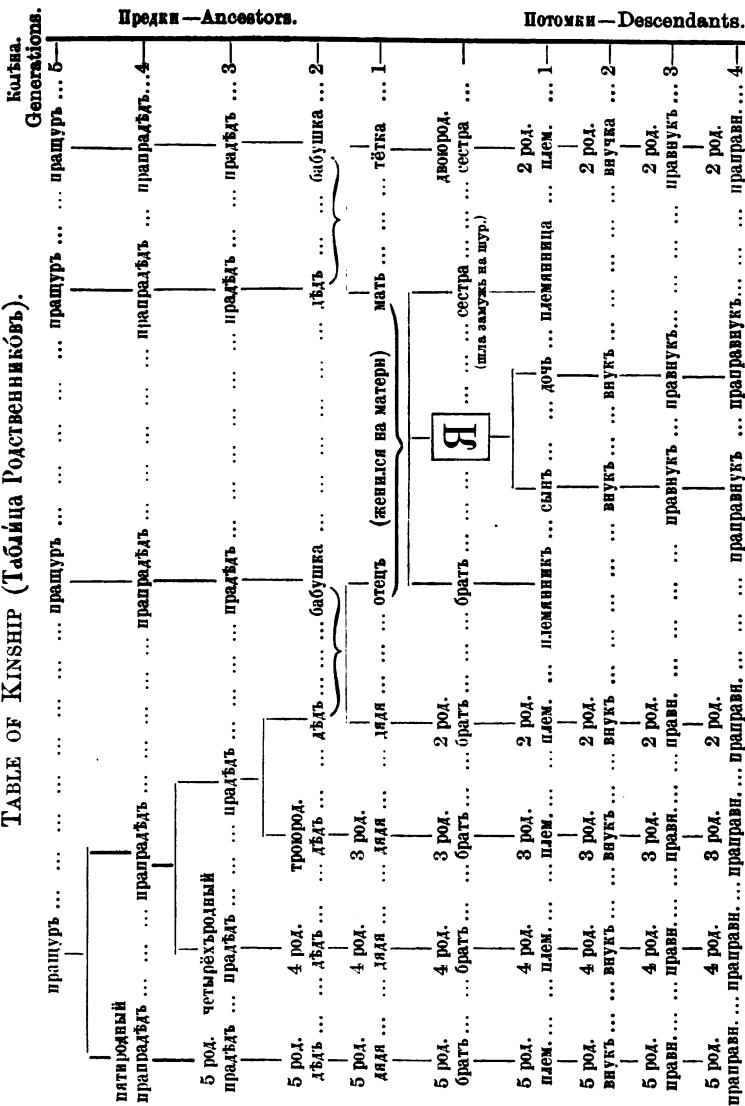
Онъ выдалъ Анну замужъ на Илью.
He gave Anne in marriage to Ilya.

Моя сестра замужемъ.
My sister is married.

Замужство, замужество marriage (of a woman).
Женитьба marriage (of a man).

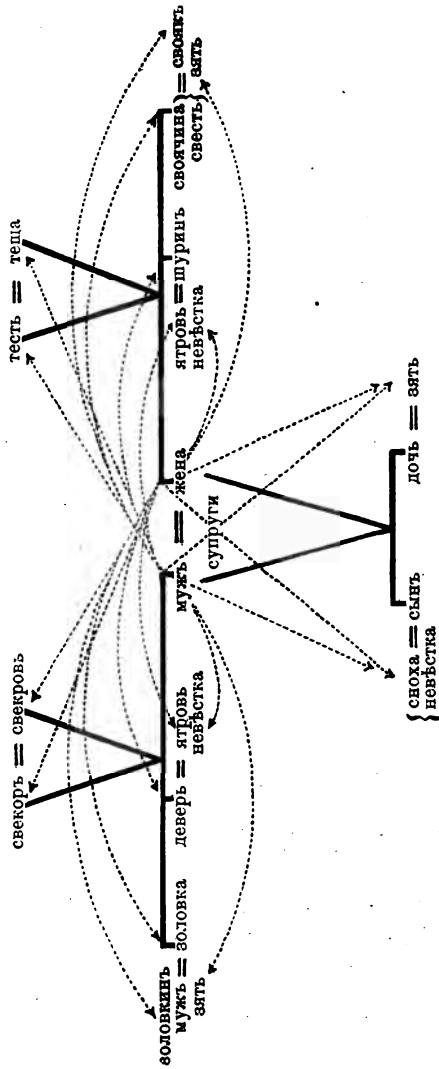
Relations of the half-blood are said to be единокровный; e.g. мой братъ единокровный my half-brother, and are further distinguished as братъ по матери, сестра по отцу, etc.

TABLE OF KINSHIP (Таблица Родственникóв).



E.g. My fourth cousin (fern.) once removed (in older generation) мој патријордан тетка.

TABLE OF AFFINITIES (Таблица Свойственниковъ).
Родители по браку или по свойству.



2

Е.8. Женатые на двухъ сестёр называются мёжами собою сёстри. Жёны двухъ братьевъ мёжами собою братьевъ.
Золовка это мужина сестра. Шуринами называются женины братья.
Зять имѣть двойное значеніе: онъ или сестрина, или братьяна мужъ; такимъ образомъ невѣстка есть, если
братьяна жена или сестрина.

ETYMOLOGY.

Under this head a list of formatives of nouns, verbs, and adjectives is inserted in alphabetical order. Except for those few whose accentuation is fixed, i.e. either absolutely atonic, or else always stressed, and subject to special rules stated in the body of the grammar, the rule is that *these terminations are accented, whenever the primary form is capable of throwing its accent forward in any inflection* (e.g. *столъ*, *столá* and *столъръ*; but *общій*, *обще*, *общество*; *товарищъ*, *товарищество*); they are *unaccented, if the primary form has a fixed accent on its stem*. Thus, too, *царь*, *царі*, *паріца*; but *начальникъ*, *начальника*, *начальница*; *работа*, *работникъ*, *рабботать*, etc.

Some of the terminations are now “dead,” i.e. disused, except in survivals. When this is so, a special remark is made to this effect.

The letter *ь* will be found prefixed to many. This indicates that in composition the previous sounds, vowels or consonants, must be modified. [v. § 5.]

§ 98. THE NOUNS.

I. Foreign terminations in common use. These are few in number and easily learnt.

-'ція, in foreign words, = “-tion”; e.g. *акція* share, *нація* nation, *позиція* position. Always accented as shown.

-эръ, i.e. the French “-aire” in foreign words; e.g. *акціонеръ*. The plural is in -ы.

- ёръ, i.e. the French “-eur” in foreign words; e.g. актёръ. The plural is in -ы.
- измъ = English “-ism.” This suffix is mostly accented.
- истъ = English “-ist,” used in foreign words; e.g. артистъ artist.
- логія = English “-logy” in foreign words; e.g. физіология physiology. Accented as shown.
- торъ, -соръ, in foreign words; the Latin “tor”; e.g. авторъ author, профессоръ professor. The termination is unaccented; the plural in á or ы.

II. Disused or dead suffixes.

- ьба (dead). Nouns denoting action, mostly derived from nouns; e.g. свадьба wedding (сватъ), дружьба friendship (другъ), судьба judgment (судъ). These words are mostly paroxytone.
- ва unaccented (dead). Nouns denoting action of verbs; e.g. брітва razor, клятва oath. These words are generally paroxytone, unless derived from verbs.
- мі (мени) neuter (dead). Suffix of a number of nouns such as імя name, пламя flame. Corresponds to Latin “-men,” always dissyllabic and paroxytone. [v. § 21.]
- улъ (dead). A termination found in a few Tatar words; e.g. есаулъ captain, караулъ sentry.
- ый accented, masc. second declension (dead). Names of agents; e.g. судый judge.

III. Patronymics.

-и́чъ, in patronymics ; feminine -и́чна. [v. § 83, I.]

-ови́чъ, -еви́чъ, in patronymics ; feminine -овна,
-евна. [v. § 83, I.]

-овъ, -евъ, in patronymics ; feminine -ова, -ева.
[v. § 83, I.]

IV. Termination to denote the female.

-а ; e.g. рабá (рабъ) slave.

-ева ; e.g. король king, королéва.

-и́ца, forming feminines and nouns from verbs ;
e.g. ви́сми́ца gallows, племя́ни́ца niece.

-ша (never accented), denotes the wife of an official ;
e.g. фельдъéгерша the wife of a state messenger,
дóкторма the doctor's wife.

-и́ня, -и́ня, feminine formation ; e.g. геройи́ня
heroine, княги́нина countess, боги́нина goddess,
судáрынина, бáрынина mistress.

V. Abstract nouns.

-знь fem. (dead), forms abstracts ; e.g. болéзнь
illness.

-изна (dead), forms abstracts ; e.g. отчизна father-
land, новизна novelty.

-и́на, abstracts from adjectives ; e.g. глуби́на depth,
годи́на time.

-и́ня, -и́ня, forms abstracts from adjectives ; e.g.
горди́нина pride.

-ie (unaccented), forms abstracts from adjectives ;
e.g. *весёлье* mirth.

-ость, -есть (never accented), forms abstract nouns
of the third declension from adjectives,
and retains accent of the adjective, unless it
is oxytone ; e.g. *скóрость*, *скóрый* quick ;
движимость, *движимый* moveable ; *нáгость*,
нагóй naked ; *свéжесть*, *свéжий* freshness.

-tá forms abstract nouns from adjectives ; e.g.
быстротá speed, *красотá* beauty. Almost
always accented as shown.

-шина (never accented), forms abstract nouns from
nouns, descriptive of a state of affairs ;
e.g. *Облóмовщина* Oblómovism (Oblómov, the
hero of a novel by Gončaróv) ; *пугачёвщина*,
the state of rebellion induced by the rebel
Pugačóv ; *Толстóвщина*, Tolstoyan life.

-чество forms abstracts from adjectives and nouns.
One of the commonest terminations ; e.g.
лéкарство medicine, *товарищество* society,
воровствó thieving.

VI. Verbal nouns.

-иróвка forms nouns of action from verbs in
-íровать ; e.g. *группóвка* the grouping,
маршиróвка the marching. Always thus
accented.

-ниe (seldom accented), forming verbal nouns.
[v. § 42 (2) (i).] Note, however, -ньё (враньё,
лраниё).

-тиe (very seldom accented), verbal noun. [v. § 49, II.]

VII. The agent or implement.

-акъ, -якъ, an agent; e.g. батра́къ workman, вожа́къ a leader. The accent is thrown forward in all the terminations. Always oxytone. [cf. § 25, I.]

-аръ, -яръ, an agent, derives nouns from nouns; e.g. столя́ръ joiner, боча́ръ cooper. The plural is in -а.

-аръ, an agent; e.g. зна́харь magician, понама́ръ sexton.

-епъ, agent or implement; e.g. пріймецъ a receiver, вáлецъ a roller, борéцъ a wrestler.

-икъ, an agent. The nominative is accented according to the noun from which the word is derived, when the word is oxytone the accent is thrown forward in the oblique cases; e.g. алхíмикъ alchemist, разскáзчикъ narrator, ямщи́къ coachman.

-ка (unaccented), an implement; e.g. винтóвка a rifle, вóзка carrying.

-никъ, an agent, derived from adjectives and nouns, *v.* -икъ; e.g. алтынникъ a miser, бары́шникъ a jobber, возникъ a draught horse. Feminine -ница. When -икъ is accented it throws the accent forward on to all the terminations.

-тель, an agent, forms nouns from verbs; e.g. учíтель teacher, писáтель writer. The termination is never accented, the accentuation follows the infinitive. Sometimes the words have a secondary meaning, e.g. укаzáтель index.

-**у́нъ** fem., -**у́нья** (accented), depreciatory, agent from a verb; e.g. **болту́нъ**, -**у́нья** chatterbox, **бѣгу́нъ** runaway.

-**чикъ**, -**щицъ**, an agent; e.g. **буфетчицъ** a butler, **ямщицъ** a coachman, **вальщицъ** a paper-hanger.

VIII. Diminutives.*

(1) Masculine nouns of first declension.

-**ёкъ**, -**екъ**, diminutive suffix for masculines; e.g. **кружо́къ** circle, **кругъ**.

-**я** (never accented), forms diminutives of proper names; e.g. **Пётия** (**Петръ**), **Кóля** (**Николáй**), **Серёжа** (**Сергéй**).

-**очекъ**, -**ычекъ**, diminutive denoting affection for masculine nouns; e.g. **дружо́чекъ** (**другъ**), **кружо́чекъ** (**кругъ**).

-**ышко** (masc. gen. -**ышка**, etc.), and -**ышка**, feminine (always thus accented), forms depreciatory diminutives from masculine nouns; e.g. **селя́шко** (**селó**), **вори́шка** (**воръ** thief, pick-pocket).

(2) Neuter nouns of first declension.

-**ко** (seldom accented), forms diminutive of neuter nouns; e.g. **крымъцо**, **крылéчко**; *but* **очкио**.

-**це**, diminutive; e.g. **зéркальце** mirror.

* In Russian the use of diminutives and augmentatives is very common, the subtleties of meaning are difficult of translation into English, and can only be gathered by practice. It is important for the student to recognise the forms.

-ечко, -ышко, -ушко (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from neuter nouns ; e.g. солнышко (солнце), гнездышко.

-ышко, -ышко, neut., and -ышка, -ышка, feminine, (always accented), forms depreciatory diminutives from nouns ; e.g. селышко nasty little village, коротышка pigmy, земляшка barren piece of ground, городышко ugly little town.

(3) Feminines (and masculines) of the second declension.

-ышка (unaccented), diminutive of feminines ; e.g. жёнка little woman ; книжка little book. This same termination forms diminutives of proper names ; e.g. Сашка (Александръ), Серёжка (Сергѣй).

-енъка (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from the second declension ; e.g. душенька (душá) little soul, darling.

-ышца, -ышка, forms diminutives of affection from feminine nouns ; e.g. сестрышца.

-очка, -ечка (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from second declension ; e.g. скамеечка little stool, карточка visiting card.

-ушка, -юшка (never accented), forms diminutives of affection from nouns of second declension ; e.g. матушка (мать) mother, батюшка (батя) father.

-ёнка (always accented), forms depreciatory diminutives; e.g. лошаёнка nasty little horse, коровёнка nasty little cow.

-уша, -юша, -ушка, -юшка (always accented), forms diminutives of depreciation from nouns of the second declension; e.g. Катюша from Катя Katy, Аксюша (from Аксиня).

IX. Augmentatives.

-ище (masc. and neuter), -ица (feminine), forms augmentatives from nouns; e.g. домище a big house (masc.); дурища a great fool (feminine); полотнище a big piece of cloth.

In some nouns there is no augmentative sense; e.g. жилище abode, кладбище cemetery (generally accented on the first syllable), училище a school. When -ище is not an augmentative it is, as a rule, unaccented.

-ино, -ина, forms augmentatives from nouns, generally depreciatory; e.g. домина a very big house.

X. Miscellaneous.

-анинъ, -янинъ, mostly used to denote members of nations, religions, etc. [v. § 24 (5).] Accented either oxytone or paroxytone.

-ачъ, forms descriptive nouns; e.g. бородачъ a long beard, богачъ a rich man.

-éжъ (accented, disused), forms nouns from verbs; e.g. падéжъ case (падáти), грабёжъ plunder (грабить); in the oblique cases падежá, etc.

-ёнокъ, plural -йта, the young of animals;
e.g. волчёнокъ, волчата wolf; галчёнокъ jack-daw; but щенокъ, щенйта puppy; волчокъ wolf's cub. [v. § 26 (5).]

-ло, from verbs; noun describes action of verb and follows accent of the past tense in лъ; e.g. нача́ло beginning, одѣ́ло blanket, вѣ́ло winnowing-fan, вайло chisel.

§ 99. ADJECTIVAL SUFFIXES.

-авый (dead); e.g. лукавый sly, величавый stately.
Accented on termination -а́в.

-вáтый, a termination mainly used with adjectives denoting substance, generally accented -вáтый; e.g. аляповáтый clumsy, виновáтый guilty, витиевáтый eloquent.

-овáтый, -евáтый, added to adjectives, often has the sense of “-ish”; e.g. синевáтый bluish, бѣловáтый whitish. Always thus accented.

-вítый, descriptive adjective (from nouns); e.g. грановítый faceted, даровítый talented.

-икій, adjectival suffix; e.g. вели́кій big.

-истый, from nouns, “resemblance”; e.g. золотистый gold-coloured, глинистый clayey.

-и́ческий forms adjectives mostly from words derived from Greek; e.g. ариомети́ческий arithmetical, практи́ческий practical. Accented as shown.

- ий (unaccented), forms possessive adjectives ; e.g. *ворóній* a crow's. [v. § 35.]
- ливый forms adjectives from nouns ; e.g. *счастливъ* happy, *стыдливъ* shamefast.
- мый, present passive participle, equivalent to “-ble.” [v. § 89, II.]
- ов-, -ев-, one of the commonest ways of forming adjectives of all sorts ; e.g. *боковóй* lateral, *Петровъ* of Peter, *Алексеевъ* of Alexis, *верховóй* upper, *тисовый* of yew, *вѣковой* age-long.
- окій adjectival ending, -окъ substantive ; e.g. *глубокій* deep, *знатокъ* an expert, *зрачокъ* pupil of eye.
- онькій, -енъкій, forms adjectives with diminutive meaning ; e.g. *маленький* very small, *плѣхонький* unwell, *тихонький* silent.
- учій, -ячій, former pres. part. act., now adjectival ; e.g. *могучій* powerful, *горячій* hot, *зыбучій* vacillating. [v. § 44.]
- чатый, forming descriptive adjectives ; e.g. *кошачатый* knotted, *зубчатый* notched. Accentuation follows that of principal noun.
- чивъ, forming adjectives ; e.g. *задумчивый* thoughtful, *говярчивый* talkative. The termination is unaccented.
- шній, adjectival from nouns ; e.g. *домашній* domestic, *вчерашній* yesterday's, *теперешній* of the present time.

-ьскій, -ьской, forms adjectives of all sorts.

There is no shortened predicative form. The accentuation is that of the noun from which the adjective is derived.

A few words accent **-ьской**; e.g. **мужскóй** male, **людскóй** public, **городскóй** civic.

-ынъ, -иной, one of the commonest ways of forming adjectives of all sorts; e.g. **больнóй** ill, **госудáрственныи** of the State, **важнýй** important.

-инъ, forms possessive adjectives in the second declension; e.g. **дядинъ** the uncle's. [v. § 34(2).]

-йшій, -айшій, -ѣ, comparatives. [v. § 37.]

-яннýй, -янóй, adjectives of substance; e.g. **водянóй** watery, **деревянный** wooden, **мáслянýй** buttery.

§ 100. VERBAL FORMATIONS.

-йровать (third conjugation), used mainly in foreign words; e.g. **атрофíровать** to atrophy. [v. § 53 (3).]

-ить (fourth conjugation), forms transitive verbs; e.g. **стáрить** to make old, **бѣсить** to drive frantic. [v. § 59, V.]

-нуть, verbs of second conjugation. [v. § 50.]

-ывать, -иватъ, iterative verbs. [v. § 59, I. (4).]

-ѣть (third conjugation), inceptive verbs; e.g. **алѣть** to grow red, **краснѣть** to blush. [v. § 53 (2).]

With roots ending in **ч**, **ш**, **щ**, the termination is **-ать**, v. § 55, II.

LONDON:

PRINTED BY WILLIAM CLOWES AND SONS, LIMITED,
DUKE STREET, STAMFORD STREET, S.E., AND GREAT WINDMILL STREET, W.

